## TOSHIBA

# SERVICE HANDBOOK MULTIFUNCTIONAL DIGITAL SYSTEMS 

## e-STUDI0163/203

Under the copyright laws, this manual cannot be reproduced in any form without prior written permission of TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION. No patent liability is assumed, however, with respect to the use of the information contained herein.

## GENERAL PRECAUTIONS REGARDING THE SERVICE FOR e-STUDIO163/203

## The installation and service should be done by a qualified service technician.

## 1) Transportation/Installation

- When transporting/installing the equipment, employ two persons and be sure to hold the positions as shown in the figure.
The equipment is quite heavy and weighs approximately 32 kg ( 70.55 lb ), therefore pay full attention when handling it.

- Be sure not to hold the movable parts or units when transporting the equipment.
- Be sure to use a dedicated outlet with AC $110 \mathrm{~V} / 13.2 \mathrm{~A}, 115 \mathrm{~V}$ or $127 \mathrm{~V} / 12 \mathrm{~A}, 220-240 \mathrm{~V}$ or 240 V/8 A for its power source.
- The equipment must be grounded for safety.
- Select a suitable place for installation. Avoid excessive heat, high humidity, dust, vibration and direct sunlight.
- Provide proper ventilation since the equipment emits a slight amount of ozone.
- To insure adequate working space for the copying operation, keep a minimum clearance of 80 $\mathrm{cm}\left(32^{\prime \prime}\right)$ on the left, $80 \mathrm{~cm}(32$ ") on the right and $10 \mathrm{~cm}(4$ ") on the rear.
- The equipment shall be installed near the socket outlet and shall be easily accessible.
- Be sure to fix and plug in the power cable securely after the installation so that no one trips over it.


## 2) General Precautions at Service

- Be sure to turn the power OFF and unplug the power cable during service (except for the service should be done with the power turned ON).
- Unplug the power cable and clean the area around the prongs of the plug and socket outlet once a year or more. A fire may occur when dust lies on this area.
- When the parts are disassembled, reassembly is the reverse of disassembly unless otherwise noted in this manual or other related documents. Be careful not to install small parts such as screws, washers, pins, E-rings, star washers in the wrong places.
- Basically, the equipment should not be operated with any parts removed or disassembled.
- The PC board must be stored in an anti-electrostatic bag and handled carefully using a wristband since the ICs on it may be damaged due to static electricity.


## Caution: Before using the wristband, unplug the power cable of the equipment and make sure that there are no charged objects which are not insulated in the vicinity.

- Avoid expose to laser beam during service. This equipment uses a laser diode. Be sure not to expose your eyes to the laser beam. Do not insert reflecting parts or tools such as a screwdriver on the laser beam path. Remove all reflecting metals such as watches, rings, etc. before starting service.
- Be sure not to touch high-temperature sections such as the exposure lamp, fuser unit, damp heater and areas around them.
- Be sure not to touch high-voltage sections such as the chargers, developer, high-voltage transformer and power supply unit. Especially, the board of these components should not be touched since the electric charge may remain in the capacitors, etc. on them even after the power is turned OFF.
- Make sure that the equipment will not operate before touching potentially dangerous places (e.g. rotating/operating sections such as gears, belts pulleys, fans and laser beam exit of the laser optical unit).
- Be careful when removing the covers since there might be the parts with very sharp edges underneath.
- When servicing the equipment with the power turned ON, be sure not to touch live sections and rotating/operating sections. Avoid exposing your eyes to laser beam.
- Use designated jigs and tools.
- Use recommended measuring instruments or equivalents.
- Return the equipment to the original state and check the operation when the service is finished.

3) Important Service Parts for Safety

- The breaker, door switch, fuse, thermostat, thermofuse, thermistor, IC-RAMs including lithium batteries, etc. are particularly important for safety. Be sure to handle/install them properly. If these parts are short-circuited and their functions become ineffective, they may result in fatal accidents such as burnout. Do not allow a short-circuit or do not use the parts not recommended by Toshiba TEC Corporation.

4) Cautionary Labels

- During servicing, be sure to check the rating plate and cautionary labels such as "Unplug the power cable during service", "CAUTION. HOT", "CAUTION. HIGH VOLTAGE", "CAUTION. LASER BEAM", etc. to see if there is any dirt on their surface and if they are properly stuck to the equipment.

5) Disposal of the Equipment, Supplies, Packing Materials, Used Batteries and IC-RAMs

- Regarding the recovery and disposal of the equipment, supplies, packing materials, used batteries and IC-RAMs including lithium batteries, follow the relevant local regulations or rules.


## Caution:

Dispose of used batteries and IC-RAMs including lithium batteries according to this manual. Attention:

Se débarrasser de batteries et IC-RAMs usés y compris les batteries en lithium selon ce manuel. Vorsicht:

Entsorgung der gebrauchten Batterien und IC-RAMs (inclusive der Lithium-Batterie) nach diesem Handbuch.

## CONTENTS

1. SPECIFICATIONS / ACCESSORIES / OPTIONS / SUPPLIES ..... 1-1
1.1 Specifications ..... 1-1
1.2 Accessories ..... 1-5
1.3 Options ..... 1-6
1.4 Supplies ..... 1-7
1.5 System List ..... 1-8
2. ERROR CODE AND SELF-DIAGNOSTIC MODE ..... 2-1
2.1 Error Code List ..... 2-1
2.1.1 Jam. ..... 2-1
2.1.2 Service call ..... 2-2
2.2 Self-diagnosis Modes ..... 2-3
2.2.1 Input check (Test mode 03) ..... 2-5
2.2.2 Output check (Test mode 04) ..... 2-8
2.2.3 Test print mode (Test mode 07) ..... 2-10
2.2.4 List Print Mode (9S) ..... 2-11
2.2.5 Access code mode (8S) ..... 2-13
2.2.6 Function Setting Mode (1*) ..... 2-15
2.2.7 Adjustment mode (05) ..... 2-16
2.2.8 Setting mode (08) ..... 2-32
3. ADJUSTMENT ..... 3-1
3.1 Adjustment of Auto-Toner Sensor ..... 3-1
3.2 Image Dimensional Adjustment ..... 3-3
3.2.1 General description ..... 3-3
3.2.2 Paper alignment at the registration roller ..... 3-5
3.2.3 Printer related adjustment ..... 3-7
3.2.4 Scanner related adjustment ..... 3-11
3.3 Image Quality Adjustment (Copying Function) ..... 3-19
3.3.1 Density adjustment ..... 3-19
3.3.2 Gamma slope adjustment ..... 3-20
3.3.3 Sharpness adjustment. ..... 3-21
3.3.4 Setting range correction ..... 3-22
3.3.5 Setting range correction (Adjustment of background peak) ..... 3-22
3.3.6 Adjustment of smudged/faint text ..... 3-23
3.3.7 Adjustment of image density ..... 3-24
3.4 Image Quality Adjustment (Printing Function) ..... 3-25
3.4.1 Adjustment of smudged/faint text ..... 3-25
3.4.2 Adjustment of image density ..... 3-26
3.5 Adjustment of High-Voltage Transformer ..... 3-27
3.5.1 Adjustment ..... 3-27
3.5.2 Precautions ..... 3-33
3.6 Adjustment of the Scanner Section ..... 3-35
3.6.1 CIS unit ..... 3-35
3.6.2 CIS unit drive belt-1 ..... 3-35
3.6.3 Scan motor (CIS unit drive belt-2) ..... 3-36
3.7 Adjustment of the Paper Feeding System ..... 3-37
3.7.1 Sheet sideways deviation caused by paper feeding ..... 3-37
3.8 Adjustment of Developer Unit ..... 3-38
3.8.1 Doctor-to-sleeve gap ..... 3-38
3.9 Adjustment of the ADF (MR-2017) ..... 3-41
3.9.1 Adjustment of ADF Position ..... 3-41
3.9.2 Adjustment of ADF Height ..... 3-46
3.9.3 Adjustment of Skew ..... 3-48
3.9.4 Adjustment of the Leading Edge Position ..... 3-50
3.9.5 Adjustment of Horizontal Position ..... 3-51
3.9.6 Adjustment of Copy Ratio ..... 3-52
3.9.7 Adjustment of ADF Opening/Closing Sensor ..... 3-53
4. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) ..... 4-1
4.1 General Descriptions for PM Procedure ..... 4-1
4.2 Operational Items in Overhauling ..... 4-2
4.3 Preventive Maintenance Checklist ..... 4-3
4.4 PM KIT ..... 4-12
4.5 Jig List ..... 4-13
4.6 Grease List ..... 4-14
4.7 Precautions for Storing and Handling Supplies ..... 4-15
4.7.1 Precautions for storing TOSHIBA supplies ..... 4-15
4.7.2 Checking and cleaning of photoconductive drum ..... 4-16
4.7.3 Checking and cleaning of drum cleaning blade ..... 4-17
4.7.4 Checking and cleaning of fuser roller and pressure roller ..... 4-17
5. TROUBLESHOOTING ..... 5-1
5.1 Diagnosis and Prescription for Each Error Code ..... 5-1
5.1.1 Paper transport jam ..... 5-1
5.1.2 Paper misfeeding ..... 5-4
5.1.3 Cover open jam ..... 5-7
5.1.4 Transport jam (ADF) ..... 5-10
5.1.5 Drive system related service call ..... 5-13
5.1.6 Scanning system related service call ..... 5-14
5.1.7 Fuser unit related service call ..... 5-15
5.1.8 ADF related service call ..... 5-17
5.1.9 Laser optical unit related service call ..... 5-17
5.1.10 Service call for others ..... 5-18
5.2 Troubleshooting for the Image ..... 5-19
5.3 Replacement of PC Boards ..... 5-41
5.3.1 Replacing MAIN board ..... 5-41
5.3.2 Replacing SRAM board ..... 5-41
6. FIRMWARE UPDATING ..... 6-1
6.1 Firmware Updating with Download Jig ..... 6-1
6.1.1 PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG ..... 6-2
6.1.2 Writing the data to the download jig (PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG) ..... 6-5
6.2 Firmware Updating with TOSHIBA Viewer ..... 6-7
7. POWER SUPPLY UNIT ..... 7-1
7.1 Output Channel ..... 7-1
7.2 Fuse ..... 7-2
7.3 Configuration of Power Supply Unit ..... 7-3
8. WIRE HARNESS CONNECTION ..... 8-1
8.1 AC Wire Harness ..... 8-1
8.2 DC Wire Harness ..... Appendix
8.3 Electric Parts Layout ..... Appendix
9. SPECIFICATIONS / ACCESSORIES / OPTIONS / SUPPLIES
10. ERROR CODE AND SELF-DIAGNOSTIC MODE
11. ADJUSTMENT
12. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM)
13. TROUBLESHOOTING
14. FIRMWARE UPDATING
15. POWER SUPPLY UNIT
16. WIRE HARNESS CONNECTION

## 1. SPECIFICATIONS / ACCESSORIES / OPTIONS / SUPPLIES

### 1.1 Specifications

Values in [] are for e- STUDIO203 in case that the specification is different among e-STUDIO163 and e-STUDIO203.

- Copy process Indirect electrophotographic process (dry)
- Type
- Original table
- Accepted originals

Desktop type
Fixed type (the left rear corner used as guide to place originals)
Sheet, book and 3 -dimensional object. The automatic document feeder
(ADF) only accepts paper which are not pasted or stapled. (Single-sided originals: 50 to $127 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2} / 13$ to 34 lb . Bond) Carbon paper are not acceptable either.
Maximum size: A3/LD

- Copy speed (Copies/min.)
e-STUDIO163

| Paper size | Drawer | Bypass feed |  | PFU |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Size specified | Size not specified |  |
| A4, B5, LT | 16 | 16 | 11 | 16 |
| A5-R, ST-R | - | 16 | 11 | - |
| A4-R, B5-R, LT-R | 15.5 | 15.5 | 11 | 15.5 |
| B4, LG, FOLIO, COMPUTER | 13 | 13 | 11 | 13 |
| A3, LD | 11 | 11 | 11 | 11 |

e-STUDIO203

| Paper size | Drawer | Bypass feed |  | PFU |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Size specified | Size not specified |  |
| A4, B5, LT | 20 | 20 | 11 | 20 |
| A5-R, ST-R | - | 20 | 11 | - |
| A4-R, B5-R, LT-R | 15.5 | 15.5 | 11 | 15.5 |
| B4, LG, FOLIO, COMPUTER | 13 | 13 | 11 | 13 |
| A3, LD | 11 | 11 | 11 | 11 |

* "-" means "Not acceptable".
* The copy speed in the above table are available when originals are manually placed for single side, multiple copying.
* When the ADF is used, the copy speed of 16[20] sheets per minute is only available under the following conditions:
- Original/Mode: Single side original/A4/LT size. APS/automatic density are not selected.
- Number of sheets: 16[20] or more.
- Reproduction ratio: $100 \%$

Copy speed for thick paper (Copies/min.)
e-STUDIO163/203

Thick 1 ( $81 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ to $105 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}, 21.3 \mathrm{lb}$. Bond to 28 lb . Bond)

| Paper size | Drawer | Bypass feed |  | PFU |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Size specified | Size not specified |  |
| A4, B5, LT | $-[-]$ | $16[18.5]$ | $10.5[10.5]$ | $-[-]$ |
| A5-R, ST-R | $-[-]$ | $16[18.5]$ | $10.5[10.5]$ | $-[-]$ |
| A4-R, B5-R, LT-R | $-[-]$ | $14.5[14.5]$ | $10.5[10.5]$ | $-[-]$ |
| B4, LG, FOLIO, COMPUTER | $-[-]$ | $12[12]$ | $10.5[10.5]$ | $-[-]$ |
| A3, LD | $-[-]$ | $10.5[10.5]$ | $10.5[10.5]$ | $-[-]$ |

Thick $2\left(106 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right.$ to $163 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}, 28 \mathrm{lb}$. Bond to 90 lb . Index)

| Paper size | Drawer | Bypass feed |  | PFU |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Size specified | Size not specified |  |
| A4, B5, LT | $-[-]$ | $16[18.5]$ | $10.5[10.5]$ | $-[-]$ |
| A5-R, ST-R | $-[-]$ | $16[18.5]$ | $10.5[10.5]$ | $-[-]$ |
| A4-R, B5-R, LT-R | $-[-]$ | $14.5[14.5]$ | $10.5[10.5]$ | $-[-]$ |
| B4, LG, FOLIO, COMPUTER | $-[-]$ | $12[12]$ | $10.5[10.5]$ | $-[-]$ |
| A3, LD | $-[-]$ | $10.5[10.5]$ | $10.5[10.5]$ | $-[-]$ |

- Copy paper

|  | Drawer | PFU | Bypass copy | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Size | A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, B5-R, LD, LG, LT, LT-R, FOLIO, COMPUTER, 13"LG, 8.5" x 8.5", 8K, 16K, 16K-R |  | A3 to A5-R, LD to ST-R, FOLIO, COMPUTER, 13"LG, 8.5" x 8.5", 8K, 16K, 16K-R <br> (Non-standard or user-specified sizes can be set.) |  |
| Weight | 64 to $80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ |  | 50 to $163 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ (Single paper feeding) 64 to $80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ (Continuous feeding) |  |
| Special paper | - |  | Tracing paper, labels, OHP film (thickness: $80 \mu \mathrm{~m}$ or thicker), | These special papers recommended by Toshiba Tec |

- First copy time
. Approx. 7.6 sec . or less
(A4/LT, 100\%, original placed manually)
- Warming-up time.................. Approx. 25 sec. (temperature: $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ )
- Multiple copying ................... Up to 999 copies; Key in set numbers
- Reproduction ratio $\qquad$ Actual ratio: $100 \pm 0.5 \%$
Zooming: 25 to $200 \%$ in increments of $1 \%$
- Resolution/Gradation

Scanning: 600 dpi $\times 600$ dpi
Printing: Equivalent to 2400 dpi x 600 dpi
Gradation: 256 steps

- Eliminated portion ................ Leading edges: $3.0 \pm 2.0 \mathrm{~mm}$, Side/trailing edges: $2.0 \pm 2.0 \mathrm{~mm}$ (copy) Leading / trailing edges: $5.0 \pm 2.0 \mathrm{~mm}$, Side edges: $5.0 \pm 2.0 \mathrm{~mm}$ (print)
- Paper feeding

Standard drawer:
1 drawer (stack height 28 mm , equivalent to 250 sheets; 64 to $80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ (17 to 22 lb . Bond))

Paper Feed Unit (PFU):
Option (One drawer: stack height 28 mm , equivalent to 250 sheets; 64 to $80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ (17 to 22 lb . Bond))

Bypass feeding:
Stack height 11.8 mm : equivalent to 100 sheets; 64 to $80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ (17 to 22 lb . Bond)

- Capacity of originals in the automatic document feeder (Option)
................................................. A3 to A5-R, LD to ST-R: 100 sheets $/ 80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ (Stack height 16 mm or less)
- Toner supply $\qquad$ Automatic toner density detection/supply Toner cartridge replacing method (There is a recovered toner supply mechanism.)
- Density control $\qquad$ Automatic density mode and manual density mode selectable in 7 steps
- Weight................................. Approximately 32 kg ( 70.55 lb. ) (excluding the developer material and toner)
- Power requirements............. AC $110 \mathrm{~V} / 13.2 \mathrm{~A}, 115 \mathrm{~V}$ or $127 \mathrm{~V} / 12 \mathrm{~A}$ $220-240 \mathrm{~V}$ or $240 \mathrm{~V} / 8 \mathrm{~A}(50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz})$
* The acceptable value of each voltage is $\pm 10 \%$.
- Power consumption ............ 1.5 kW or less ( 100 V series)
1.6 kW or less ( 200 V series)
* The electric power is supplied to the ADF through the equipment.
- Total counter $\qquad$ Electronical counter
- Dimensions of the equipment $\qquad$ W $600 \times \mathrm{D} 643 \times \mathrm{H} 462.5(\mathrm{~mm})$ : See the figure below


Fig. 1-1

### 1.2 Accessories

| Unpacking/setup instruction | 1 set |
| :--- | :--- |
| Operator's manual | 1 pc. |
| Operator's manual pocket | 1 pc. |
| Power cable | 1 pc. |
| CD-ROM | 2 pcs. |
| Rubber plug | 6 pcs. |
| Transfer charger wire cleaner <br> (installed inside of the transfer cover) | 1 pc. |
| Drum (installed inside of the equipment) | 1 pc. |
| Developer material | 1 pc. |
| Toner cartridge | 1 pc. |
| Warranty sheet | 1 pc. (for NAD and CND) |
| Setup report | 1 set (for NAD, MJD and CND) |
| Customer satisfaction card | 1 pc. (for MJD) |
| Packing list | 1 pc. (for CND) |
| Customer survey sheet | 1 pc. (for CND) |
| Certificate of conformance | 1 pc. (for CND) |

* Machine version

NAD: $\quad$ North America
ASD: $\quad$ Hong Kong / Latin America
AUD: Australia
MJD: Europe
ASU: Asia / Saudi Arabia
SAD: Saudi Arabia
ARD: Latin America
CND: China
TWD: Taiwan
KRD: Korea
JPD: Japan

### 1.3 Options

| Platen Cover | KA-1640 PC |
| :--- | :--- |
| Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) | MR-2017 |
| Paper Feed Unit (PFU) | MY-1027 / C |
| Expansion Memory | GC-1240 |

### 1.4 Supplies

| Drum | OD-1600 (except for China) <br> OD-2320 (for China) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Toner cartridge | PS-ZT1640 (4) (for North America) |
|  | PS-ZT1640D (4) (for Asia, Central and South America) |
|  | PS-ZT1640D5K (4) (for Asia, Central and South America) |
|  | PS-ZT1640C (4) (for China) |
|  | PS-ZT1640C5K (4) (for China) |
|  | PS-ZT1640T (4) (for Taiwan) |
|  | PS-ZT1640E (1) (for Europe) |
|  | PS-ZT1640E5K (1) (for Europe) |
| Developer material | D-2320 (except for China) |
|  | D-2320C (for China) |

### 1.5 System List



Fig. 1-2

## 2. ERROR CODE AND SELF-DIAGNOSTIC MODE

### 2.1 Error Code List

One of the following error codes is displayed with " 7 -segment LED" while pressing the [CLEAR/ STOP] button and the digital key [8] simultaneously when the "CLEAR PAPER" or "CALL SERVICE" symbol is blinking.

### 2.1.1 Jam

| Error code | Classification | Contents | Troubleshooting |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| E01 | Paper exit jam | Jam not reaching the exit sensor: The paper which has passed through the fuser unit does not reach the exit sensor. | P. 5-1 |
| E02 |  | Stop jam at the exit sensor: The trailing edge of the paper does not pass the exit sensor after its leading edge has reached this sensor. | P. 5-1 |
| E03 | Other paper jam | Power-ON jam: The paper is remaining on the paper transport path when power is turned ON. | P. 5-2 |
| E09 |  | Jam at the registration area due to registration timeout error | - |
| E12 | Paper misfeeding | Bypass misfeeding (Paper not reaching the registration sensor): The paper fed from the bypass tray does not reach the registration sensor. | P. 5-4 |
| E13 |  | Drawer misfeeding (Paper not reaching the registration sensor): The paper fed from the drawer does not reach the registration sensor. | P. 5-5 |
| E14 |  | PFU drawer misfeeding (Paper not reaching the PFU feed sensor): The paper fed from the PFU drawer does not reach the PFU feed sensor. | P. 5-6 |
| E21 | Paper transport jam | PFU drawer transport jam (Paper not reaching the registration sensor): The paper does not reach the registration sensor after it has passed the PFU feed sensor. | P. 5-3 |
| E40 | Cover open jam | Transfer cover open jam: The transfer cover has opened during printing. | P. 5-7 |
| E41 |  | Front cover open jam: The front cover has opened during printing. | P. 5-8 |
| E44 |  | PFU cover open jam: The PFU cover has opened during printing. | P. 5-9 |
| E71 | ADF jam | Jam not reaching the original registration sensor: The original fed from the original feeding tray does not reach the original registration sensor. | P. 5-10 |
| E72 |  | Jam not reaching the read sensor: The original does not reach the read sensor after it has passed the registration sensor. | P. 5-10 |
| E73 |  | Stop jam at the exit sensor: The trailing edge of the original does not pass the exit sensor after its leading edge has reached this sensor. | P. 5-11 |
| E86 |  | ADF jam access cover open: The ADF jam access cover has opened during ADF operation. | P. 5-11 |
| E87 |  | ADF open jam: ADF has opened during ADF operation. | P. 5-12 |

### 2.1.2 Service call

| Error code | Classification | Contents | Troubleshooting |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| C01 | Drive system <br> related service call | Main motor abnormality: The main motor is not rotating <br> normally. | P. 5-13 |
| C21 | Scanning system |  |  |
| related service call | CIS unit initialization error | - |  |
| C26 | Peak detection error: Lighting of the exposure lamp <br> (white reference) is not detected when power is turned <br> ON. | P. 5-14 |  |
| C41 | Fuser unit related <br> service call | Thermistor or heater abnormality at power-ON: Abnor- <br> mality of service call the thermistor is detected when <br> power is turned ON or the temperature of the fuser roller <br> does not rise in a specified period of time after power is <br> turned ON. | P. 5-15 |
| C43 |  | Thermistor abnormality during warming up or in ready <br> status after abnormality judgment |  |
|  |  | Heater abnormality after abnormality judgment: The tem- <br> perature of the fuser roller has exceeded the range of <br> control (in this case, the main switch turns OFF automati- <br> cally) or does not even reach the range. | P. 5-16 |
| C45 |  | Thermistor abnormality during printing: Abnormality of the <br> thermistor is detected during printing. | P. 5-16 |
| C55 | Optional communi- <br> cation related ser- <br> vice call | ADF I/F error: Communication error has occurred <br> between the ADF and the scanner |  |
| C97 | Process related <br> service call | High-voltage transformer abnormality: Leakage of the <br> main charger is detected. | P. 5-18 |
| CA1 | Laser optical unit <br> related service call | Polygonal motor abnormality: The polygonal motor is not <br> rotating normally. | P. 5-17 |
| CA2 | H-Sync detection error: H-Sync detection PC board can- <br> not detect laser beams. | P. 5-17 |  |
| F14 | Other service call | Invalid backup counter | - |

## 2．2 Self－diagnosis Modes

| Mode | For start | Contents | For exit | Display |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Input check mode | $\begin{aligned} & {[0]+[3]+} \\ & {[\text { POWER }]} \end{aligned}$ | Checks the status of input signals． | $\begin{aligned} & {[\mathrm{POWER}]} \\ & \text { OFF/ON } \end{aligned}$ | 117 |
| Output check mode | $\begin{aligned} & {[0]+[4]+} \\ & \text { [POWER] } \end{aligned}$ | Checks the status of output signals． | ［POWER］ OFF／ON | ！111 |
| Test print mode | $\begin{aligned} & {[0]+[7]+} \\ & {[\mathrm{POWER}]} \end{aligned}$ | Outputs the test patterns． | ［POWER］ OFF／ON | 「フィ |
| Adjustment mode | $[0]+[5]+$ <br> ［POWER］ | Adjusts various items． | ［POWER］ OFF／ON | F！111 |
| Setting mode | $\begin{aligned} & {[0]+[8]+} \\ & {[\text { POWER }]} \end{aligned}$ | Sets various items． | ［POWER］ <br> OFF／ON | 「イ1－1 |
| List print mode | $\begin{aligned} & \text { [9]+[START] } \\ & +[\text { POWER }] \end{aligned}$ | Prints out the data lists of the codes 05／08 and pixel counter． | ［POWER］ OFF／ON | $\underline{1-1}$ |
| Access code mode | ［8］＋［START］ <br> ＋［POWER］ | Registers／deletes the access code． | ［POWER］ OFF／ON | －－－ |
| Function set－ ting mode | $[1]+\left[^{*}\right]+$ <br> ［POWER］ | Sets the function table． | ［POWER］ OFF／ON | 5 |

## Note：

To enter the desired mode，turn ON the power while two digital keys designated to each mode （e．g．［0］and［5］）are pressed simultaneously．


Fig．2－1

[^0]<Operation procedure>

- Input check mode (03): Refer to $\mathbb{C}$ P. 2-5 "2.2.1 Input check (Test mode 03)".
- Output check mode (04): Refer to $\mathbb{C}$ P. 2-8 "2.2.2 Output check (Test mode 04)".
- Test print mode (07): Refer to $\mathbb{C D}$ P. 2-10 "2.2.3 Test print mode (Test mode 07)".
- Adjustment mode (05): Refer to P. 2-16 "2.2.7 Adjustment mode (05)".
- Setting mode (08): Refer to P. 2-32 "2.2.8 Setting mode (08)".
- List print mode (9S):Refer to P. 2-11 "2.2.4 List Print Mode (9S)"
- Access code mode (8S): $\mathbb{C l}$ P. 2-13 "2.2.5 Access code mode (8S)"
- Function setting mode (1*): Pal 2-15 "2.2.6 Function Setting Mode (1*)"
<Number display>
The numbers are displayed on a 7 -segment LED.
A number of more than 3 digits long is separated as follows, and is displayed from the high-order position. Press the reproduction ratio button ([200\%] or [25\%]) to shift the display to the 3 digits of the next lower/higher order.
E.g.1) Displaying 1,000,000


Fig. 2-2
E.g. 2) Displaying 80,000


Fig. 2-3

### 2.2.1 Input check (Test mode 03)

The status of each input signal can be checked by pressing the [INTERRUPT] button, and the digital keys in the test mode (03).
<Operation procedure>


Group is displayed by ON/OFF of the [INTERRUPT] LED, and the number keyed in is displayed with the 7 -segment LED. Each status is indicated by ON/OFF of the 7 [DENSITY LED] s.


Fig. 2-4 Display position of the density LED

| [INTER RUPT] LED | Number [Digital keys] | Display position of the density LED | Items to check | ON | OFF |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| OFF | [1] | 0 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 1 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 2 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 3 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 4 | Bypass paper sensor | No paper | Paper present |
|  |  | 5 | Bypass unit connection | Not connected | Connected |
|  |  | 6 | - | - | - |
| OFF | [4] | 0 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 1 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 2 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 3 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 4 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 5 | Paper empty sensor | No paper | Paper present |
|  |  | 6 | Drawer detection switch | Drawer not installed | Drawer installed |
| OFF | [6] | 0 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 1 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 2 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 3 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 4 | - - | - | - |
|  |  | 5 | PFU paper empty sensor | No paper | Paper present |
|  |  | 6 | - - | - | Paper |


| [INTER RUPT] LED | Number [Digital keys] | Display position of the density LED | Items to check | ON | OFF |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| OFF | [7] | 0 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 1 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 2 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 3 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 4 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 5 | PFU feed sensor | Paper present | No paper |
|  |  | 6 | PFU drawer detection switch | No drawer | Drawer present |
| OFF | [8] | 0 | Toner cartridge detection switch | No cartridge | Cartridge present |
|  |  | 1 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 2 | Polygonal motor rotation status (Motor is rotating at Output Mode (04)) | Abnormal rotation | Normal rotation |
|  |  | 3 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 4 | PFU board connection | Not connected | Connected |
|  |  | 5 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 6 | 24 V power supply (Front cover opening/closing) | 24 V ON | 24 V OFF |
| OFF | [9] | 0 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 1 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 2 | PFU cover opening/closing switch | Cover opened | Cover closed |
|  |  | 3 | Front cover opening/closing switch | Cover opened | Cover closed |
|  |  | 4 | - - | - | - |
|  |  | 5 | Exit sensor | Paper present | No paper |
|  |  | 6 | Registration sensor | Paper present | No paper |
| OFF | [0] | 0 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 1 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 2 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 3 | Developer unit switch | Not connected | Connected |
|  |  | 4 | Fuser unit switch | Connected | Not connected |
|  |  | 5 | - - | - | - |
|  |  | 6 | Externally counter connection | Not connected | Connected |


| [INTER RUPT] LED | Number [Digital keys] | Display position of the density LED | Items to check | ON | OFF |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ON | [1] | 0 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 1 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 2 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 3 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 4 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 5 | High-voltage transformer error | Normal | Error |
|  |  | 6 | - | - | - |
| ON | [2] | 0 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 1 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 2 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 3 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 4 | CIS home position sensor | Home position | Other than home position |
|  |  | 5 | Platen sensor | Cover opened | Cover closed |
|  |  | 6 | ADF connection | Connected | Not connected |
| ON | [4] | 0 | ADF read sensor | Original present | No original |
|  |  | 1 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 2 | ADF exit sensor | Original present | No original |
|  |  | 3 | ADF opening/closing sensor | ADF opened | ADF closed |
|  |  | 4 | ADF cover opening/closing sensor | Cover opened | Cover closed |
|  |  | 5 | ADF empty sensor | Original present | No original |
|  |  | 6 | ADF tray sensor | Original present | No original |
| ON | [5] | 0 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 1 | - | - | - |
|  |  | 2 | ADF original width sensor-3 | Original present | No original |
|  |  | 3 | ADF original width sensor-2 | Original present | No original |
|  |  | 4 | ADF original width sensor-1 | Original present | No original |
|  |  | 5 | ADF original length sensor | Original present | No original |
|  |  | 6 | ADF registration sensor | Original present | No original |

### 2.2.2 Output check (Test mode 04)

Status of the output signals can be checked by keying in the following codes in the test mode 04.
<Operation procedure>
Procedure 1


Procedure 2


Procedure 3


| Code | Function | Code | Function | Procedure |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 101 | Main motor ON (operational without developer unit) | 151 | Code No. 101 function OFF | 1 |
| 102 | Toner motor ON (normal rotation) | 152 | Code No. 102 function OFF | 1 |
| 103 | Polygonal motor ON (600 dpi) | 153 | Code No. 103 function OFF | 1 |
| 108 | Registration clutch ON | 158 | Code No. 108 function OFF | 1 |
| 110 | ADU motor ON (low speed) | 160 | Code No. 110 function OFF | 1 |
| 118 | Laser ON | 168 | Code No. 118 function OFF | 1 |
| 201 | Pickup solenoid ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 202 | PFU pickup solenoid ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 203 | PFU transport clutch (high speed) ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 204 | Bypass pickup solenoid ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 205 | PFU transport clutch (low speed) ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 218 | Key copy counter count up |  |  | 2 |
| 235 | Discharge LED ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 236 | Exhaust fan ON/OFF (low speed) |  |  | 3 |
| 237 | Exhaust fan ON/OFF (high speed) |  |  | 3 |
| 249 | Developer bias [-DC] ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 252 | Main charger ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 253 | Separation bias ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 255 | Transfer guide bias ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 256 | Transfer transformer ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 261 | Scan motor ON (Automatically stops at limit position) |  |  | 2 |
| 267 | Contact image sensor Unit ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 281 | ADF feed motor ON/OFF (normal rotation) |  |  | 3 |
| 282 | ADF feed motor ON/OFF (reverse rotation) |  |  | 3 |
| 283 | ADF read motor ON/OFF (normal rotation) |  |  | 3 |
| 284 | ADF reverse motor ON/OFF (normal rotation) |  |  | 3 |
| 285 | ADF reverse motor ON/OFF (reverse rotation) |  |  | 3 |
| 410 | Switching regulator cooling fun ON/OFF (low speed) |  |  | 3 |
| 411 | Switching regulator cooling fun ON/OFF (high speed) |  |  | 3 |

### 2.2.3 Test print mode (Test mode 07)

The embedded test pattern can be printed out by keying in the following codes in the test print mode (07).
<Operation procedure>


## Notes:

1. Test printing is set by default to continue until the [CLEAR] button is pressed, or an error occurs. Note that printing may therefore continue until the paper set in the specified drawer completely runs out.
2. When an error occurs, it is indicated on the panel, but the recovery operation is not performed. Turn OFF the power and then back ON to clear the error.
3. During test printing, all button operations are disabled when the Message lamps on the control panel light.

| Code | Types of test pattern | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 111 | Primary scanning direction 33 gradation steps | Error diffusion |
| 113 | Secondary scanning direction 33 gradation steps | Error diffusion |
| 142 | Grid pattern | Pattern width: 2 dots, Pitch: 10 mm |
| 149 | Solid black pattern (Whole area) | A3/LD |

### 2.2.4 List Print Mode (9S)

Lists of the function setting, adjustment mode (05), setting mode (08), system setting, memory dump, etc. can be output in this mode.

## <Setting procedure>

101: FUNC (FUNC, 05/08) data list
102: System setting list


103: Memory dump list


Outputs a memory dump list of a specified size from a specified address.
Notes:

- Key in 6 digits for the address specification and 4 digits for the size specification.
- Key in using the digital keys as in the table below to enter the letters A to F.

| Letter of alphabet | A | $\mathbf{B}$ | $\mathbf{C}$ | $\mathbf{D}$ | $\mathbf{E}$ | $\mathbf{F}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Digital keys | $\left[^{*}\right][0]$ | $\left[^{*}\right][1]$ | $\left[^{*}\right][2]$ | $\left[^{*}\right][3]$ | $\left[{ }^{*}\right][4]$ | $\left[^{*}\right][5]$ |

E.g.)When outputting an 80 size dump list from the address 0x0000A0

|  | Display | Key-in order |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Address specification (6 digits) | 0000 A 0 | $[0]->[0]->[0]->[0]->[\star]->[0]->[0]$ |
| Size specification (4digits) | 0080 | $[0]->[0]->[8]->[0]$ |

## Output sample

| MEMORY | DUMP LIST |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | PAGE | : 001 |
| ADDRESS | HEX DATA |  | ASCII |
| 0000AO | 0000000000000000 | 0000000000000000 |  |
| 0000B0 | 0000000000000000 | 0000000000000000 |  |
| 0000C0 | 0000000000000000 | 0000000000000000 |  |
| 0000D0 | 0000000000000000 | 0000000000000000 |  |
| 0000E0 | 0000000000000000 | 0000000000000000 |  |
| 0000F0 | 0000000000000000 | 0000000000000000 |  |
| 000100 | 0000000000000000 | 0000000000000000 |  |
| 000110 | 0000000000000000 | 0000000000000000 |  |

Fig. 2-5

### 2.2.5 Access code mode (8S)

Storing/deleting of the access code, and confirming and changing of the counter value can be done in the access code mode (8S).

## Note:

Department management must be enabled in FUNC-18 (bit-2) before you can use a registered access code.
<Setting procedure>
Registering the access code


## Notes:

- Register up to 99 access codes in 3-digit numbers from 001 to 999.
- If the [START] button is pressed with an access code which has been already registered, a beep sounds and the display returns to the initial screen.

Deleting the access code


## Notes:

- Auto search for the access code: Every time the [INTERRUPT] button is pressed, registered access codes are displayed in order.
- If the [START] button is pressed with an access code which has not been registered previously, the display returns to the initial screen.

Confirming and changing of the access code counter value


## Notes:

- A counter value is separated as follows: 1000280 070, and is displayed from the high-order position. Press the reproduction ratio button ([200\%] or [25\%]) to shift the counter value display to the 3 digits of the next lower/higher order.
- Change of the counter value can be registered only after the [START] button is pressed. If the [CLEAR] button is pressed before the registration is completed, the changed value is also canceled.
- Only the total counter value for each access code can be confirmed.


### 2.2.6 Function Setting Mode (1*)

The function tables can be set in the function setting mode (1*).
Each function table consists of 8 bits, and each bit is assigned to one function. To set a function, place a 0 or 1 in the bit which enables the function you want to set.
<Operation procedure>


## Notes:

- Place a 0 or 1 in the bit you want to set in the function table.
- Press the [CLEAR] button in the middle of the setting to return to the initial screen.

| FUNC Type |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| 100 | FUNC |
| 101 | PCFUNC |
| 102 | HOME |


| FUNC (100) |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Code | Bit | Default | Items |  | Contents |  |
| 18 | 7 | 0 | Undefined | - | - |  |
|  | 6 | 1 | Undefined | - | - |  |
|  | 5 | 0 | Undefined | - | - |  |
|  | 4 | 0 | Undefined | - | - |  |
|  | 3 | 1 | Undefined | - | - |  |
|  | 2 | 0 | Department Code <br> setting | $0:$ No <br> $1:$ Yes | This bit setting determines whether or not the <br> department control function is available. |  |
|  | 1 | 0 | Undefined | - | - |  |
|  | 0 | Undefined | - | - |  |  |

### 2.2.7 Adjustment mode (05)

Items in the adjustment mode list in the following pages can be corrected or changed in the adjustment mode (05). Turn ON the power with pressing the digital keys [0] and [5] simultaneously in order to enter this mode.

Classification List of Adjustment Mode (05)

| Classification |  | Adjustment Mode (05) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ADF | [Aligning amount] | 354 |
|  | [Transporting] | 357,358,365 |
| Image | [Printer density] | 667-0 to 4,672-0 to 4,676-0 to 4 |
|  | [Image density] | 501,503,504,505,506,507,508,509,510,512,514,515,532,533,534,845, $846,847,850,851,852,855,856,857,860,861,862$ |
|  | [Gamma table] | 609 |
|  | [Gamma balance] | 596-0 to 2,597-0 to 2,598-0 to 2,599-0 to 2 |
|  | [Gamma slope] | 593,594,595 |
|  | [Background adjustment] | 600,601,602,869,870,871 |
|  | [Sharpness] | 620,621,622,623,865-0 to 2,866-0 to 2,867-0 to 2 |
|  | [Smudged/Faint text] | 648,654,655,664,665 |
|  | [Margin] | 430,431,432,433,435,436,437,438 |
|  | [Range correction] | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 535,536,537,570,571,572,693,694,695,820,821,822,825,826,827,830, } \\ & 831,832,835,836,837 \end{aligned}$ |
| Paper feeding | [Paper pushing amount] | $466-0$ to 7 |
|  | [Aligning amount] | $450-0$ to $2,451-0$ to $2,458-0$ to $2,460-0$ to $2,461-0$ to $2,462-0$ to 3 , $463-0$ to $2,464-0$ to $2,469-0$ to 5 |
| Drive | [Exit motor] | 424 |
|  | [Main motor] | 421 |
| Development | [Auto-toner] | 200,201 |
|  | [Developer bias] | 205 |
|  | [Temperature] | 270 |
|  | [Relative humidity] | 247 |
|  | [Drum temperature] | 248 |
| Scanner | [LED] | 311,312,313 |
|  | [Position] | 305,306 |
|  | [Carriage position] | 359 |
|  | [Shading position] | 350,351 |
|  | [Reproduction ratio] | 340 |
|  | [Peak] | 310 |
| Charger | [Main charger bias] | 210 |
| Transfer | [Transfer bias] | 220,221,222 |
| Separation | [Separation bias] | 233,234,235 |
| Process | [Toner recycle] | 280 |
| Laser | [Write starting] | 410,411,440,441,442 |
|  | [Polygonal motor] | 401,405 |
|  | [Laser power] | 286 |
|  | [Sideways deviation] | 497-0 to 5 |

Procedure 1


* Press [\#] to enter minus (-).

Procedure 2


Procedure 3


* Press [\#] to enter minus (-).

Procedure 4


* Press [\#] to enter minus (-).

Procedure 6


Procedure 7


Procedure 17


## Note:

The fuser roller temperature control at the adjustment mode is different from that at the normal state.
Therefore, the problem of fusing efficiency may be occurred in the test copy at the adjustment mode. In that case, turn ON the power normally, leave the equipment for approx. 3 minutes after it has become ready state and then start up the adjustment mode again.

## Test print pattern in Adjustment Mode (05)

Procedure


| Test code | Types of test pattern | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | Grid pattern | Pattern width: 2 dots, <br> Pitch: 10 mm |
| 2 | Solid black pattern (whole area) | A3/LD |

## Notes:

- The digit after the hyphen in "Code" of the following table is a sub code.
- In "RAM", the SRAM of the board in which the data of each code is stored is indicated. "M" and "SYS" stands for the MAIN board.

| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 200 | Developer | Automatic adjustment of auto-toner sensor <br> (Fuser heater ON) | ALL | - | - | As the value increases, the sensor output increases correspondingly. <br> The value starts changing approx. 2 minutes after this adjustment was started and is automatically set in the range of 2.35 to 2.45 V . <br> Selection is disable when developer unit is not installed. (Chap. 3.1) | 17 |
| 201 | Developer | Correction of auto-toner sensor <br> (Fuser heater ON) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 141 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the control value of the auto-toner sensor setup in 05-200. * Selection is disable when developer unit is not installed. | 3 |
| 205 | Developer | Developer bias DC output adjustment | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 135 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | As the value increases, the transformer output | 3 |
| 210 | Charger | Main charger grid bias output adjustment | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 78 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | increases correspondingly. Remove the devel- | 3 |
| 220 | Transfer | Transfer transformer DC output adjustment (H) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | oper unit and install the adjustment jig to make adjustment. | 3 |
| 221 | Transfer | Transfer transformer DC output adjustment (C) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 141 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | (Chap. 3.5) | 3 |
| 222 | Transfer | Transfer transformer DC output adjustment (L) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 108 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 3 |
| 233 | Separation | Separation transformer DC output adjustment (H) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 55 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 3 |
| 234 | Separation | Separation transformer DC output adjustment (C) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 55 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 3 |
| 235 | Separation | Separation transformer DC output adjustment (L) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 36 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 3 |
| 247 | Developer | Relative humidity latest value | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 50 \\ <0-100> \end{gathered}$ | M | Displaying of the relative humidity latest value. | 2 |
| 248 | Developer | Drum temperature latest value | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 25 \\ <0-100> \end{gathered}$ | M | Displaying of the drum temperature latest value. | 2 |
| 270 | Developer | Temperature latest value | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 25 \\ <0-50> \end{gathered}$ | M | Displaying of the temperature latest value. | 2 |
| 280 | Process | Forced performing of idling for toner recycle | ALL | - | M | Perform this adjustment before the replacement of the developer material. (The toner is forcibly removed from the cleaner.) | 6 |
| 286 | Laser | Laser power adjustment | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 60 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | When the value increases, the laser output increases correspondingly. | 3 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 305 | Scanner | Image location adjustment of secondary scanning direction (scanner section) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 105 \\ <51-206> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases by " 1 ", the image shifts by approx. 0.0640 mm toward the trailing edge of the paper. | 1 |
| 306 | Scanner | Image location adjustment of primary scanning direction (scanner section) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 127 \\ <121- \\ 136> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases by " 1 ", the image shifts by approx. 0.169 mm toward the front side of the paper. | 1 |
| 310 | Scanner | Forced performing of peak detection |  | ALL | - | - | Activates the light intensity adjustment control | 7 |
| 311 | Scanner | LED (R) current effective value setting |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 76 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Displays total of the initial value and light intensity correction value. | 1 |
| 312 | Scanner | LED (B) current effective value setting |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 62 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Displays total of the initial value and light intensity correction value. | 1 |
| 313 | Scanner | LED (YG) current effective value setting |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 160 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Displays total of the initial value and light intensity correction value. | 1 |
| 340 | Scanner | Reproduction ratio adjustment of secondary scanning direction (scanner section) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 134 \\ <76-181> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases by " 1 ", the reproduction ratio in the secondary scanning direction (vertical to paper feeding direction) increases by approx. 0.0947\%. | 1 |
| 350 | Scanner | Shading position adjustment | Original glass | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <118- \\ 138> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | 0.064 mm/step | 1 |
| 351 |  |  | ADF | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <118- \\ 138> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 354 | ADF | Adjustment of ADF paper alignment |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-20> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases by " 1 ", the aligning amount increases by approx. 0.4 mm . | 1 |
| 357 | ADF | Fine adjustment of ADF transport speed |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 50 \\ <0-100> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases by " 1 ", the reproduction ratio of the secondary scanning direction when using the ADF increases by approx. 0.1\%. | 1 |
| 358 | ADF | ADF sideways deviation adjustment |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases by " 1 ", the image of original fed from the ADF shifts toward the rear side of paper by approx. 0.169 mm . | 1 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 359 | Scanner | Carriage position adjustment during scanning from ADF |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases by " 1 ", the carriage position when using the ADF shifts by approx. 0.1 mm toward the original feeding side. | 1 |
| 365 | ADF | ADF leading edge position adjustment | for single sided original | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 50 \\ <0-100> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases by " 1 ", the copied image of original fed from the ADF shifts toward the trailing edge of paper by approx. 0.2 mm . | 1 |
| 401 | Laser | Fine adjustment of polygonal motor rotation speed (adjustment of primary scanning direction reproduction ratio) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 134 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | When the value increases by " 1 ", the reproduction ratio of primary scanning direction increases by approx. $0.07 \%$. (approx. $0.1 \mathrm{~mm} /$ step) | 1 |
| 405 |  |  |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 131 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 410 | Laser | Adjustment of primary scanning laser writing start position. |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 88 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | When the value increases by " 1 ", the writing start position shifts to the front side by approx. 0.0423 mm . | 1 |
| 411 |  |  |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 88 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 421 | Drive | Adjustment of secondary scanning direction reproduction ratio (fine adjustment of main motor speed) |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { PPC/ } \\ & \text { PRT } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | When the value increases by " 1 ", the reproduction ratio of secondary scanning direction increases by approx. 0.04\%. | 1 |
| 424 | Drive | Fine adjustment of exit motor speed |  | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { PPC/ } \\ & \text { PRT } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} 160 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | When the value increases by " 1 ", the rotation becomes faster by approx. $0.05 \%$. | 1 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | Default <Acceptable value> | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 430 | Image | Top margin adjustment (blank area at the leading edge of the paper) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 9 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | When the value increases by " 1 ", the blank area becomes wider by approx. 0.0423 mm . | 1 |
| 431 | Image | Left margin adjustment (blank area at the left of the paper along the paper feeding direction) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 432 | Image | Right margin adjustment (blank area at the right of the paper along the paper feeding direction) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 110 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 433 | Image | Bottom margin adjustment (blank area at the trailing edge of the paper) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 153 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 435 | Image | Top margin adjustment (blank area at the leading edge of the paper) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 24 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 436 | Image | Left margin adjustment (blank area at the left of the paper along the paper feeding direction) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 437 | Image | Right margin adjustment (blank area at the right of the paper along the paper feeding direction) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 438 | Image | Bottom margin adjustment (blank area at the trailing edge of the paper) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 440 | Laser | Adjustment of secondary scanning laser writing start position | Drawer | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 14 \\ <0-40> \end{gathered}$ | M | When the value increases by " 1 ", the image shifts toward the leading edge of the paper by approx. 0.2 mm . | 1 |
| 441 |  |  | PFU | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 21 \\ <0-40> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 442 |  |  | Bypass feeding | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 8 \\ <0-15> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 450-0 | $\begin{gathered} \text { Paper } \\ \text { feeding } \end{gathered}$ | Paper aligning amount adjustment at the registration section (Drawer/Plain paper) | Long size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 20 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M | When the value increases by " 1 ", the aligning amount increases by approx. 0.9 mm . <br> <Paper length> Long size: <br> 330 mm or longer Middle size: 220 mm to 329 mm Short size: <br> 219 mm or shorter | 4 |
| 450-1 |  |  | Middle size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 20 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 450-2 |  |  | Short size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 20 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 451-0 | Paper feeding | Paper aligning amount adjustment at the registration section (PFU/ Plain paper) | Long size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 14 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 451-1 |  |  | Middle size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 14 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 451-2 |  |  | Short size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 14 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 458-0 | Paper feeding | Paperaligning amount adjustment at the registration section (Bypass feeding/Plain paper) | Long size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M | When the value increases by " 1 ", the aligning amount increases by approx. 1.4 mm . <br> <Paper length> Long size: <br> 330 mm or longer Middle size: 220 mm to 329 mm Short size: 219 mm or shorter | 4 |
| 458-1 |  |  | Middle size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 458-2 |  |  | Short size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 460-0 | Paper feeding | Paper aligning amount adjustment at the registration section (Bypass feeding/Thick paper 1) | Long size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 460-1 |  |  | Middle size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 460-2 |  |  | Short size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 461-0 | Paper feeding | Paperaligning amount adjustment at the registration section (Bypass feeding/Thick paper 2) | Long size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 461-1 |  |  | Middle size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 461-2 |  |  | Short size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 462-0 | Paper feeding | Paperaligning amount adjustment at the registration section (Bypass feeding/Thick paper 3) | Long size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 462-1 |  |  | Middle size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 462-2 |  |  | Short size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 462-3 |  |  | Postcard | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 463-0 | Paper feeding | Paperaligning amount adjustment at the registration section (Bypass feeding/OHP film) | Long size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 463-1 |  |  | Middle size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 463-2 |  |  | Short size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 464-0 | Paper feeding | Paperaligning amount adjustment at the registration section (Bypass feeding /Envelope) | Long size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 26 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 464-1 |  |  | Middle size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 26 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 464-2 |  |  | Short size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 26 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 466-0 | Paper feeding | Adjustment of paper pushing amount/ Bypass feeding | Plain paper | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | When the value increases by " 1 ", the driving speed of bypass feed roller increases by approx. 0.2 ms when the paper transport is started from the registration section. <br> * Postcard is supported only for JPN model. | 4 |
| 466-1 |  |  | Postcard | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 466-3 |  |  | Envelope | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 466-4 |  |  | Thick paper 1 | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 466-5 |  |  | Thick paper 2 | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 466-6 |  |  | Thick paper 3 | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 466-7 |  |  | OHP film | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 469-0 | Paper feeding | Paperaligning amount adjustment at the registration section (Drawer) | Thick paper 1 Long size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 20 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M | When the value increases by " 1 ", the aligning amount increases by approx. 0.8 mm . <br> <Paper length> Long size: <br> 330 mm or longer Middle size: <br> 220 mm to 329 mm Short size: 219 mm or shorter | 4 |
| 469-1 |  |  | Thick paper 1 Middle size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 20 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 469-2 |  |  | Thick paper 1 Short size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 20 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 469-3 |  |  | Thick paper 2 Long size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 20 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 469-4 |  |  | Thick paper 2 Middle size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 22 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 469-5 |  |  | Thick paper 2 Short size | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 19 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 497-0 | Laser | Adjustment of drawer sideways deviation | Drawer | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | When the value increases by " 1 ", the image shifts toward the front side by 0.0423 mm . | 4 |
| 497-1 |  |  | PFU | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 497-5 |  |  | Bypass feeding | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 501 | Image | Density adjustment Fine adjustment of "manual density"/ Center value | Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases, the image at the center step becomes darker. | 1 |
| 503 |  |  | Text/Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 504 |  |  | Text | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 505 | Image | Density adjustment Fine adjustment of "manual density"/ Light step value | Text/Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 33 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases, the image of the "light" steps becomes lighter. | 1 |
| 506 |  |  | Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 33 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 507 |  |  | Text | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 33 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 508 | Image | Density adjustment Fine adjustment of "manual density"/ Dark step value | Text/Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 33 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases, the image of the "dark" steps becomes darker. | 1 |
| 509 |  |  | Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 33 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 510 |  |  | Text | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 33 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 512 | Image | Density adjustment Fine adjustment of "automatic density" | Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases, the image becomes darker. | 1 |
| 514 |  |  | Text/Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 515 |  |  | Text | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 532 | Image | Range correc-tion/Background peak adjustment | Text/Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 32 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases, the background becomes more brightened. | 1 |
| 533 |  |  | Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 22 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 534 |  |  | Text | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 46 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 535 | Image | Range correction/Text peak adjustment | Text/Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 246 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value decreases, the text becomes darker. | 1 |
| 536 |  |  | Text | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 254 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 537 |  |  | Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 236 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 570 | Image | Range correction on original manually set on the original glass | Text/Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} \text { EUR:12 } \\ \text { UC:12 } \\ \text { JPN:22 } \\ <11-14, \\ 21-24, \\ 31-34, \\ 41-44> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Sets whether the values of the background peak and text peak are fixed or not. One's place is an adjustment for "automatic density" and ten's place is for "manual density". Once they are fixed, the range correction is performed with standard values. The values of the background peak and text peak affect the reproduction of the background density and text density respectively. <br> 1: fixed/fixed <br> 2: varied/fixed <br> 3: fixed/varied <br> 4: varied/varied <br> Background peak/ Text peak | 1 |
| 571 |  |  | Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 12 \\ <11-14, \\ 21-24, \\ 31-34, \\ 41-44> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 572 |  |  | Text | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 22 \\ <11-14, \\ 21-24, \\ 31-34, \\ 41-44> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 593 | Image | Gamma data slope adjustment | Text/Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <1-9> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Select the slope of Gamma curve (The larger the value is, the larger the slope becomes.) | 1 |
| 594 | Image |  | Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <1-9> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 595 | Image |  | Text | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <1-9> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 596-0 | Image | Gamma balance adjustment (PS/Photo) | Low density | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases, the density in the target area becomes higher. | 4 |
| 596-1 |  |  | Medium density | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 596-2 |  |  | High density | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 597-0 | Image | Gamma balance adjustment (PS/Text) | Low density | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 597-1 |  |  | Medium density | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 597-2 |  |  | High density | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 598-0 | Image | Gamma balance adjustment (PCL/Photo) | Low density | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 598-1 |  |  | Medium density | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 598-2 |  |  | High density | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 599-0 | Image | Gamma balance adjustment (PCL/Text) | Low density | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 599-1 |  |  | Medium density | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 599-2 |  |  | High density | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 600 | Image | Background adjustment | Text/Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <1-9> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value decreases, the background becomes darker. When the value increases, the background becomes lighter. | 1 |
| 601 |  |  | Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <1-9> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 602 |  |  | Text | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <1-9> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 609 | Image | Switching of the scanner Gamma correction table when paper. (ADF) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-4> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 620 | Image | Sharpness adjustment | Text/Photo | PPC | EUR: 1 <br> UC: 1 <br> JPN: 0 <br> <0-99> | SYS | When the value increases, the image becomes sharper. When the value decreases, the | 1 |
| 621 |  |  | Photo (Error diffusion) | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-99> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | image becomes softer. The smaller the value is, the less the moire | 1 |
| 622 |  |  | Text | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-99> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | becomes. <br> One's place: Selecting a filter shape | 1 |
| 623 |  |  | Photo (Dither) | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-99> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Ten's place: Adjustable from 0 to 9 regarding the default value as the standard (The larger the value is, the sharper the image becomes.) <br> When entering " 0 " on the ten's place, this value is not displayed on the entry screen. | 1 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 648 | Image | Adjustment of smudged/ faint text |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <0-4> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Adjustment of the smudged/faint text. With decreasing the value, the faint text is suppressed, and with increasing it, the smudged text is suppressed. | 1 |
| 654 | Image | Adjustment of smudged/faint text | PS | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <0-9> \end{gathered}$ | M | Adjustment of the smudged/faint text. With decreasing the value, the faint text is suppressed, and with increasing it, the smudged text is suppressed. | 1 |
| 655 |  |  | PCL | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <0-9> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 664 | Image | Upper limit value in tonersaving period | PS |  | $\begin{gathered} 176 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | When the value decreases, the density of the printed text becomes lower. | 1 |
| 665 |  |  | PCL |  | $\begin{gathered} 176 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 667-0 | Image | Density adjustment of copied image |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M | Adjusts the density level of copied image. When the value decreases, the text becomes lighter. | 4 |
| 667-1 |  |  |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 19 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 667-2 |  |  |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 25 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 667-3 |  |  |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 31 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 667-4 |  |  |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 44 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 672-0 | Image | Adjustment of printer image density | GDI | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M | Adjustment of the image density. <br> With decreasing the value, the text becomes lighter. | 4 |
| 672-1 |  |  |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 19 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 672-2 |  |  |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 25 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 672-3 |  |  |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 31 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 672-4 |  |  |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 56 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 676-0 |  |  | PS/PCL | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 676-1 |  |  |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 19 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 676-2 |  |  |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 25 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 676-3 |  |  |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 31 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 676-4 |  |  |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 44 \\ <0-63> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |



| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 830 | Image | Range correction on original set on the ADF | Text/Photo | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 12 \\ <11-14, \\ 21-24, \\ 31-34, \\ 41-44> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Sets whether the value of the background peak and text peak are fixed or not. One's place is an adjustment for "automatic density" and ten's place is for "manual density". Once they are fixed, the range correction is performed with standard values. The values of the background peak and text peak affect the reproduction of the background density and text density respectively. <br> 1: fixed/fixed <br> 2: varied/fixed <br> 3: fixed/varied <br> 4: varied/varied Background peak/ Text peak | 1 |
| 831 |  |  | Text | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 12 \\ <11-14, \\ 21-24, \\ 31-34, \\ 41-44> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 832 |  |  | Photo | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 12 \\ <11-14, \\ 21-24, \\ 31-34, \\ 41-44> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 835 | Image | Range correc-tion/Background peak adjustment | Text/Photo | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 32 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases, the background becomes more brightened. | 1 |
| 836 |  |  | Text | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 46 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 837 |  |  | Photo | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 16 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 845 | Image | Density adjustment Fine adjustment of "manual density"/ Center value | Text/Photo | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases, the image at the center step becomes darker. | 1 |
| 846 |  |  | Text | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 847 |  |  | Photo | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 850 | Image | Density adjustment Fine adjustment of "manual density"/ Light step value | Text/Photo | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 33 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases, the image of the "light" steps becomes lighter. | 1 |
| 851 |  |  | Text | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 33 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 852 |  |  | Photo | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 33 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 855 | Image | Density adjustment Fine adjustment of "manual density"/ Dark step value | Text/Photo | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 33 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases, the image of the "dark" steps becomes darker. | 1 |
| 856 |  |  | Text | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 33 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 857 |  |  | Photo | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 33 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 860 | Image | Density adjustment Fine adjustment of "automatic density" | Text/Photo | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases, the image becomes darker. | 1 |
| 861 |  |  | Text | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 862 |  |  | Photo | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 865-0 | Image | Sharpness adjustment (Text/Photo) | Reproduction ratio $40 \%$ or smaller | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-99> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value increases, the image becomes sharper. When the value decreases, the image becomes softer. The smaller the value is, the less the moire becomes. <br> One's place: Selecting a filter shape <br> Ten's place: Sharpness intensity (0: Use default value, 1-9: Filter intensity) | 4 |
| 865-1 |  |  | Reproduction ratio 41-80\% | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-99> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 865-2 |  |  | Reproduction ratio $81 \%$ or larger | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-99> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 866-0 | Image | Sharpness adjustment (Text) | Reproduction ratio $40 \%$ or smaller | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-99> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 866-1 |  |  | Reproduction ratio 41-80\% | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-99> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 866-2 |  |  | Reproduction ratio 81\% or larger | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-99> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 867-0 | Image | Sharpness adjustment (Photo) | Reproduction ratio $40 \%$ or smaller | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-99> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 867-1 |  |  | Reproduction ratio 41-80\% | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-99> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 867-2 |  |  | Reproduction ratio 81\% or larger | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-99> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 4 |
| 869 | Image | Background adjustment | Text/Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 4 \\ <1-9> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | When the value decreases, the background becomes darker. When the value increases, the background becomes lighter. | 1 |
| 870 |  |  | Photo | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 6 \\ <1-9> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 871 |  |  | Text | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 4 \\ <1-9> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |

### 2.2.8 Setting mode (08)

The items in the setting code list can be set or changed in this setting mode (08).

## Note:

When inputting a 4-digit code (ie. 1000 to 1999), press the [\%] button instead of " 1 " for the thousand's place, and then key in the other 3 digits.
E.g.) 1372: [\%] -> [3] -> [7] -> [2]

Classification List of Setting Mode (08)

| Classification |  | Setting Mode (08) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ADF | [Switchback] | 462 |
| Counter | [Counter copy] | 388,389 |
|  | [scanning pages in copier] | 312-0 to 16,327-0 to 2 |
|  | [Platen] | 386,313-0 to 16,329-0 to 2 |
|  | [Double count] | 345,346,347,348,349,352,353 |
|  | [Total Counter copy] | 388,389 |
|  | [Total number of pages] | $335-0$ to 2 |
|  | [Toner cartridge] | 1410 |
|  | [Number of output pages] | 305-0 to 16,306-0 to 16,307-0 to 16,320-0 to 2 , $321-0$ to $2,322-0$ to 2 |
|  | [External counter] | 381 |
|  | [Paper source] | 356,357,358,374 |
|  | [Fuser unit] | 1372,1378,1380,1382 |
|  | [Media type] | 1385,1386,1388,1411 |
| Image | [Error diffusion / Dither] | 502 |
|  | [Default setting] | 538,550 |
| Paper feeding | [change of paper source] | 481 |
|  | [Retry] | 456-0 to 1,459-0 to 1,482,1390,1391,1394,1396,1397,1400 |
|  | [Default setting] | 480 |
|  | [Paper exit] | 698,699 |
|  | [Paper size] | 224,226 |
|  | [Paper dimension] | 210-0 to 1,229-0 to 1,230-0 to 1,231-0 to 1 , $232-0$ to $1,233-0$ to $1,234-0$ to $1,235-0$ to 1 , 236-0 to $1,237-0$ to $1,238-0$ to $1,239-0$ to 1 , $240-0$ to $1,241-0$ to $1,242-0$ to $1,244-0$ to 1 , $245-0$ to $1,337-0$ to $1,338-0$ to $1,339-0$ to 1 , $340-0$ to $1,341-0$ to $1,471-0$ to 1 |
|  | [APS] | 904 |
| Development | [Auto-toner] | 414 |
|  | [Developer bias] | 833,834,835,836,837,840,858,859,860,861,862,863 |
| General | [Reset] | 655 |
|  | [Toner cartridge check] | 695 |
|  | [Nearly empty] | 971 |
|  | [Page setting] | 949 |
|  | [Switching mode] | 903 |
|  | [Line] | 203 |
|  | [Department management] | 672 |
| Scanner | [LED] | 464 |
|  | [Control status] | 463 |
| Main charger bias | [Main charger bias] | 805,806,807,808,809,814,819,826,864,865,866,867 |


| Classification |  | Setting Mode (08) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Fuser | [Pre-running] | 439,440,441,523,526 |
|  | [Temperature] | 404-0 to $3,405-0$ to $3,407,409,410,411,413$, $424-0$ to $3,425-0$ to $3,433-0$ to $1,437,438,448,450,451$, $452,453,476-0$ to $3,515,516,520,521,525-0$ to 3 , $527-0$ to $3,535-0$ to $1,536-0$ to $3,537-0$ to 3 , $539-0$ to $3,540-0$ to $3,541-0$ to $3,800-0$ to 1 , 801-0 to $1,802-0$ to $1,804-0$ to $1,886,896-0$ to 1 |
|  | [Status counter] | 400 |
| Transfer bias | [Transfer bias] | 830,868,869 |
| Separation bias | [Separation bias] | 831,870,871 |
| Version | [Engine firmware] | 907 |
|  | [System firmware] | 900,921,922,923 |
| Image processing | [LED] | 1913 |
|  | [Auto-toner] | 455 |
|  | [Toner recycle] | 838 |
|  | [Drum life correction] | 1628-0 to 1 |
|  | [temperature/humidity] | 839 |
| Maintenance | [PM counter] | 251,252 |
|  | [Telephone number] | 250 |
|  | [Equipment number] | 995 |
| User interface | [ X in 1] | 650 |
|  | [Copy volume] | 300 |
|  | [UI shortcut key] | 688 |
|  | [Jobs clear] | 246 |
|  | [Sorting] | 641,649 |
|  | [Timer] | 204,205,206 |
|  | [Book type] | 611 |
|  | [Printing format] | 651 |
|  | [External counter] | 202 |
|  | [Default setting] | 604,607,618,642 |
|  | [Paper size] | 261 |
| Laser | [Polygonal motor] | 398,399,478,479,483,484,485,486,489,490 |
|  | [Power correction] | 872,873,875,876,877,883 |

Procedure 1,5,9,11


* Press [\#] to enter minus ( - ).


## Procedure 2



## Procedure 3



Procedure 4,10


* Press [\#] to enter minus (-).

Procedure 14


## Procedure 15



## Notes:

- The digit after the hyphen in "Code" of the following table is a sub code.
- In "RAM", the SRAM of the board in which the data of each code is stored is indicated. "M" and "SYS" stands for the MAIN board.

| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 202 | User interface | Counter installed externally | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-3> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: No external counter <br> 1: Coin controller <br> 2: Copy key card <br> 3: Key copy counter | 1 |
| 203 | General | Line adjustment mode | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: For factory shipment <br> 1: For line <br> * Field: "0" must be selected | 1 |
| 204 | User interface | Auto-clear timer setting | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <0-15> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | 0: Invalid 1: 15 sec. 2: 30 sec. 3: 45 sec. 4: 60 sec. 6: 75 sec. 6: 90 sec. $7: 105 \mathrm{sec}$. 8: $120 \mathrm{sec} .9: 135 \mathrm{sec}$. 10: 150 sec. 11: 180 sec. 12: 210 sec. 13: 240 sec. 14: 270 sec. 15: 300 sec. | 1 |
| 205 | User interface | Auto power save mode timer setting | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 11 \\ <0-30> \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 1 |
| 206 | User interface | Auto Shut Off Mode timer setting (Auto Sleep Mode) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <0-23> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 210-0 | Paper feeding | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { Paper size } \\ & (\text { A6-R) } \end{aligned}$ | feeding direction | PRT | $\begin{gathered} \hline 148 \\ <105- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 210-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 105 \\ <105- \\ \text { 432> } \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 224 | Paper feeding | Paper size (Bypass) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 14 \\ <0-15> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper size (Bypass) } \\ & \text { 0:A3 } \\ & \text { 1:A4 } \\ & \text { 2:A4-R } \\ & \text { 3:A5-R } \\ & \text { 4:B4 } \\ & \text { 5:B5 } \\ & \text { 6:B5R } \\ & \text { 7:LETTER } \\ & \text { 8:LETTER-R } \\ & \text { 9:LEDGER } \\ & \text { 10:LEGAL } \\ & \text { 11:STATEMENT-R } \\ & \text { 12:COMPUTER } \\ & \text { 13:FOLIO } \\ & \text { 14:NON-STANDARD } \\ & \text { 15:POST CARD } \end{aligned}$ | 9 |
| 226 | Paper feeding | Paper size (PFU) |  | ALL | UC: 7 <br> Other: 1 <br> <0-13> | M | Paper size (PFU) 0:A3 1:A4 2:A4-R 3:A5-R 4:B4 5:B5 6:B5R 7:LETTER 8:LETTER-R 9:LEDGER 10:LEGAL 11:STATEMENT-R 12:COMPUTER 13:FOLIO | 9 |
| 229-0 | Paper feeding | Paper size (A3) | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 420 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 229-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 297 \\ <140- \\ \text { 432> } \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 230-0 | $\begin{gathered} \text { Paper } \\ \text { feeding } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper size } \\ & \text { (A4-R) } \end{aligned}$ | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 297 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 230-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 210 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 231-0 | Paper feeding | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper size } \\ & \text { (A5-R) } \end{aligned}$ | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 210 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 231-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 148 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 232-0 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper } \\ & \text { feeding } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper size } \\ & \text { (B4) } \end{aligned}$ | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} \hline 364 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 232-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 257 \\ <140- \\ \text { 432> } \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 233-0 | Paper feeding | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper size } \\ & \text { (B5-R) } \end{aligned}$ | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 257 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 233-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 182 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 234-0 | Paper feeding | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper size } \\ & \text { (LT-R) } \end{aligned}$ | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 279 \\ <140- \\ \text { 432> } \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 234-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 216 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 235-0 | Paper feeding | Paper size (LD) | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 432 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 235-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 279 \\ <140- \\ \text { 432> } \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 236-0 | Paper feeding | Paper size (LG) | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 356 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 236-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 216 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 237-0 | Paper feeding | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper size } \\ & \text { (ST-R) } \end{aligned}$ | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 216 \\ <140- \\ \text { 432> } \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 237-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 140 \\ <140- \\ \text { 432> } \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 238-0 | Paper feeding | Paper size (COMPUTER) | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 356 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 238-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 257 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 239-0 | Paper feeding | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper size } \\ & \text { (FOLIO) } \end{aligned}$ | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 330 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 239-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 210 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 240-0 | Paper feeding | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper size } \\ & \left(13^{\prime \prime L G}\right) \end{aligned}$ | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 330 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 240-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 216 \\ <140- \\ \text { 432> } \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 241-0 | Paper feeding | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { Paper size } \\ & \text { (8.5"X8.5") } \end{aligned}$ | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} \hline 216 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 241-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 216 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 242-0 | Paper feeding | Paper size (Non-standard) | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} \hline 432 \\ <105- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 242-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 279 \\ <105- \\ \text { 432> } \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 244-0 | Paper feeding | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper size } \\ & \text { (8K) } \end{aligned}$ | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 390 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 244-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 270 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 245-0 | Paper feeding | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper size } \\ & \text { (16K-R) } \end{aligned}$ | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 270 \\ <140- \\ \text { 432> } \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 245-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 195 \\ <140- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 246 | User interface | Clearing copy jobs at auto clear |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ \langle 0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: No clearing <br> 1: Clearing | 1 |
| 250 | Maintenance | Service technician telephone number |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <20 \text { dig- } \\ \text { its }> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | A telephone number can be entered up to 20 digits. | 11 |
| 251 | Maintenance | Setting value of PM counter |  | ALL | Refer to content <8 digits> | M | <Default> e-STUDIO 163 UC, EUR: 72,000 JPN: 0 e-STUDIO 203 UC, EUR: 90,000 | 1 |
| 252 | Maintenance | Current value of PM counter Display/0 clearing |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts up when the registration sensor is ON. | 1 |
| 261 | User interface | Fixes the paper size setting for the bypass tray |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: Size not fixed (Turn the power OFF or press the Function Clear key to return to the non-standard size.) <br> 1: Size fixed (Turn the power OFF or press the Function Clear key to return to the size set at 08-224.) | 1 |
| 300 | User interface | Maximum number of copy volume (MAX9) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-2> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | $\begin{array}{ll} \hline 0: 999 & 1: 99 \\ \text { 2: } 9 & \\ \hline \end{array}$ | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | Default <Acceptable value> | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 305-0 | Counter | Number of output pages in copier function | A3 | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Counts the output pages in the copier function for each paper size according to the setting for the count setting of large-sized paper (08-352) and the definition setting of large-sized paper (08353). | 4 |
| 305-1 |  |  | A4 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-2 |  |  | A5 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-3 |  |  | A6 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-4 |  |  | B4 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-5 |  |  | B5 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-6 |  |  | FOLIO |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-7 |  |  | LD |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-8 |  |  | LG |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-9 |  |  | LT |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-10 |  |  | ST |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-11 |  |  | COMP |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-12 |  |  | 13"LG |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-13 |  |  | 8.5 " $\times 8.5$ " |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-14 |  |  | 16K |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-15 |  |  | 8K |  |  |  |  |  |
| 305-16 |  |  | Others |  |  |  |  |  |
| 306-0 | Counter | Number of | A3 | PRT | 0 | SYS | Counts the output | 4 |
| 306-1 |  | output pages | A4 |  | <8 digits> |  | pages in the printer |  |
| 306-2 |  | in printer func- | A5 |  |  |  | function for each paper |  |
| 306-3 |  |  | A6 |  |  |  | setting for the count |  |
| 306-4 |  |  | B4 |  |  |  | setting of large-sized |  |
| 306-5 |  |  | B5 |  |  |  | paper (08-352) and the |  |
| 306-6 |  |  | FOLIO |  |  |  | definition setting of |  |
| 306-7 |  |  | LD |  |  |  | large-sized paper (08- |  |
| 306-8 |  |  | LG |  |  |  |  |  |
| 306-9 |  |  | LT |  |  |  |  |  |
| 306-10 |  |  | ST |  |  |  |  |  |
| 306-11 |  |  | COMP |  |  |  |  |  |
| 306-12 |  |  | 13"LG |  |  |  |  |  |
| 306-13 |  |  | 8.5 " $\times 8.5$ " |  |  |  |  |  |
| 306-14 |  |  | 16K |  |  |  |  |  |
| 306-15 |  |  | 8K |  |  |  |  |  |
| 306-16 |  |  | Others |  |  |  |  |  |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 307-0 | Counter | Number of output pages at list print mode | A3 | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Counts the output pages at the list print mode for each paper size according to the setting for the count setting of large-sized paper (08-352) and the definition setting of large-sized paper (08353). | 4 |
| 307-1 |  |  | A4 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-2 |  |  | A5 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-3 |  |  | A6 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-4 |  |  | B4 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-5 |  |  | B5 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-6 |  |  | FOLIO |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-7 |  |  | LD |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-8 |  |  | LG |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-9 |  |  | LT |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-10 |  |  | ST |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-11 |  |  | COMP |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-12 |  |  | 13"LG |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-13 |  |  | 8.5 " $\times 8.5$ " |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-14 |  |  | 16K |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-15 |  |  | 8K |  |  |  |  |  |
| 307-16 |  |  | Others |  |  |  |  |  |
| 312-0 | Counter | Number of | A3 | PPC | 0 | SYS | Counts the scanning | 4 |
| 312-1 |  | scanning | A4 |  | <8 digits> |  | pages in the copier |  |
| 312-2 |  | pages in copier func- | A5 |  |  |  | function for each paper size according to the |  |
| 312-3 |  | copier function | A6 |  |  |  | size according to the setting for the count |  |
| 312-4 |  |  | B4 |  |  |  | setting of large-sized |  |
| 312-5 |  |  | B5 |  |  |  | paper (08-352) and the |  |
| 312-6 |  |  | FOLIO |  |  |  | definition setting of |  |
| 312-7 |  |  | LD |  |  |  | large-sized paper (08- 353). |  |
| 312-8 |  |  | LG |  |  |  |  |  |
| 312-9 |  |  | LT |  |  |  |  |  |
| 312-10 |  |  | ST |  |  |  |  |  |
| 312-11 |  |  | COMP |  |  |  |  |  |
| 312-12 |  |  | 13"LG |  |  |  |  |  |
| 312-13 |  |  | 8.5" $\times 8.5$ " |  |  |  |  |  |
| 312-14 |  |  | 16K |  |  |  |  |  |
| 312-15 |  |  | 8K |  |  |  |  |  |
| 312-16 |  |  | Others |  |  |  |  |  |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 313-0 | Counter | Number of scanning pages in scanning function | A3 | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Counts the scanning pages in the scanning function for each paper size according to the setting for the count setting of large-sized paper (08-352) and the definition setting of large-sized paper (08353). | 4 |
| 313-1 |  |  | A4 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-2 |  |  | A5 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-3 |  |  | A6 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-4 |  |  | B4 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-5 |  |  | B5 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-6 |  |  | FOLIO |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-7 |  |  | LD |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-8 |  |  | LG |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-9 |  |  | LT |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-10 |  |  | ST |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-11 |  |  | COMP |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-12 |  |  | 13"LG |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-13 |  |  | 8.5 " $\times 8.5$ " |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-14 |  |  | 16K |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-15 |  |  | 8K |  |  |  |  |  |
| 313-16 |  |  | Others |  |  |  |  |  |
| 320-0 | Counter | Display of number of output pages in copier function | Large | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Counts the number of output pages in the Copier Function according to its size (large/small). Large: | 14 |
| 320-1 | Counter |  | Small | PPC | 0 <8 digits> | SYS | Number of output pages of large-sized paper defined at 08353 <br> Small: <br> Number of output | 14 |
| 320-2 | Counter |  | Total | PPC | 0 <8 digits> | SYS | pages other than set as large-sized paper Total: Total number output pages of all paper sizes. | 14 |
| 321-0 | Counter | Display of number of output pages in printer function | Large | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Counts the number of output pages in the Printer Function according to its size (large/small). Large: | 14 |
| 321-1 | Counter |  | Small | PRT | 0 <8 digits> | SYS | Number of output pages of large-sized paper defined at 08353 <br> Small: <br> Number of output | 14 |
| 321-2 | Counter |  | Total | PRT | 0 <8 digits> | SYS | pages other than set as large-sized paper Total: Total number output pages of all paper sizes. | 14 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | Default <Acceptable value> | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 322-0 | Counter | Display of number of output pages at list print mode | Large | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Counts the number of output pages at the List Print Mode Function according to its size (large/small). <br> Large: <br> Number of output pages of large-sized paper defined at 08353 <br> Small: <br> Number of output pages other than set as large-sized paper <br> Total: <br> Total number output pages of all paper sizes. | 14 |
| 322-1 | Counter |  | Small | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 14 |
| 322-2 | Counter |  | Total | PRT | 0 <8 digits> | SYS |  | 14 |
| 327-0 | Counter | Display of number of scanning pages in copier function | Large | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Counts the number of scanning pages in the Copier Function according to its size (large/small). <br> Large: <br> Number of output pages of large-sized paper defined at 08353 <br> Small: <br> Number of output pages other than set as large-sized paper <br> Total: <br> Total number output pages of all paper sizes. | 14 |
| 327-1 | Counter |  | Small | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 14 |
| 327-2 | Counter |  | Total | PPC | $0$ <8 digits> | SYS |  | 14 |
| 329-0 | Counter | Display of number of scanning pages in scanning function | Large | SCN | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits }> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Counts the number of scanning pages in the Scanning Function according to its size (large/small). <br> Large: <br> Number of output pages of large-sized paper defined at 08353 <br> Small: <br> Number of output pages other than set as large-sized paper <br> Total: <br> Total number output pages of all paper sizes. | 14 |
| 329-1 | Counter |  | Small | SCN | 0 <8 digits> | SYS |  | 14 |
| 329-2 | Counter |  | Total | SCN | 0 <8 digits> | SYS |  | 14 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 335-0 | Counter | Display of total number of pages | Large | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Displays the total number of pages. | 14 |
| 335-1 | Counter |  | Small | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 14 |
| 335-2 | Counter |  | Total | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | SYS |  | 14 |
| 337-0 | Paper feeding | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper size } \\ & (\# 10-R) \end{aligned}$ | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 241 \\ <105- \\ \text { 432> } \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 337-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 105 \\ <105- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 338-0 | Paper feeding | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper size } \\ & \text { (DL-R) } \end{aligned}$ | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 220 \\ <105- \\ \text { 432> } \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 338-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 110 \\ <105- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 339-0 | Paper feeding | Paper size (Envelope: Monerch-R) | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 191 \\ <98-432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 339-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 98 \\ <98-432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 340-0 | Paper feeding | Paper size (Envelope: CHO-3-R) | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 235 \\ <105- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 340-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 120 \\ <105- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 341-0 | $\begin{gathered} \text { Paper } \\ \text { feeding } \end{gathered}$ | Paper size (Envelope: YOU-4-R) | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 235 \\ <105- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 341-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 105 \\ <105- \\ \text { 432> } \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |
| 345 | Counter | Count setting of envelope (PM) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0 : Counted as 1 <br> 1: Counted as 2 | 1 |
| 346 | Counter | Count setting of largesized paper (PM) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0 : Counted as 1 <br> 1: Counted as 2 | 1 |
| 347 | Counter | Definition setting of largesized paper (PM) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | $\begin{array}{ll} \text { 0: } & \text { A3/LD } \\ \text { 1: } & \text { A3/LD/B4/LG/ } \\ & \text { FOLIO/COMP } \end{array}$ | 1 |
| 348 | Counter | Count setting of thick paper (PM) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0 : Counted as 1 <br> 1: Counted as 2 | 1 |
| 349 | Counter | Count setting of OHP film (PM) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0 : Counted as 1 <br> 1: Counted as 2 | 1 |
| 352 | Counter | Count setting of largesized paper (Fee charging system counter) |  | ALL | JPN: 0 Other: 1 <0-1> | M | 0: Counted as 1 <br> 1: Counted as 2 | 1 |
| 353 | Counter | Definition setting of largesized paper (Fee charging system counter) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: A3/LD <br> 1: A3/LD/B4/LG/ FOLIO/COMP/8K | 1 |
| 356 | Counter | Counter for Drawer feeding |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts the number of sheets fed from Drawer | 2 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 357 | Counter | Counter for PFU feeding | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits }> \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts the number of sheets fed from PFU | 2 |
| 358 | Counter | Counter for bypass feeding | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits }> \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts the number of sheets fed from bypass feed | 2 |
| 374 | Counter | Counter for ADF | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Counts the number of originals fed from ADF | 2 |
| 381 | Counter | Setting for counter installed externally | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | Selects the job to count up for the external counter. <br> 0 : Not selected <br> 1: Copier | 1 |
| 386 | Counter | Counter for Platen | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <6 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts the number of originals fed from platen | 2 |
| 388 | Counter | Copying total counter / SRAM board $\rightarrow$ MAIN board | ALL | - | - | Copies the total counter value of the SRAM board to the MAIN board. | 15 |
| 389 | Counter | Copying total counter / MAIN board $\rightarrow$ SRAM board | ALL | - | - | Copies the total counter value of the MAIN board to the SRAM board. | 15 |
| 398 | Laser | Number of polygonal motor rotational speed switching | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits }> \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts the number of time the polygonal motor has switched its rotational speed between normal rotation and standby rotation. | 2 |
| 399 | Laser | Accumulated time of polygonal motor at normal rotation | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Accumulates the time the polygonal motor has rotated at normal rotation. | 2 |
| 400 | Fuser | Fuser unit error status counter | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-19> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 404-0 | Fuser | Temperature drop setting in ready status (Center thermistor) | The first drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M | This code is valid only when " 20 " is set to 08 886. <br> Setting value $x-5^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ : from $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $-50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | 4 |
| 404-1 |  |  | The second drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 404-2 |  |  | The third drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 404-3 |  |  | The fourth drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 405-0 | Fuser | Temperature drop setting in ready status (Side thermistor) | The first drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 405-1 |  |  | The second drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 405-2 |  |  | The third drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 405-3 |  |  | The fourth drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 407 | Fuser | Fuser roller temperature in ready status (Side thermistor) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 6 \\ <0-12> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $190^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 409 | Fuser | Fuser roller temperature at energy saver mode (Center thermistor) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-13> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: OFF 1: $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $90^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $110^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $120^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $130^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 13: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 410 | Fuser | Fuser roller temperature during printing (Center thermistor/Plain paper) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 6 \\ <0-14> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $190^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 13: $205^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 14: $210^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 411 | Fuser | Fuser roller temperature on standby (Center thermistor) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 6 \\ <0-12> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $190^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 413 | Fuser | Fuser roller temperature during printing (Center thermistor/Thick paper 1) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 6 \\ <0-14> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $190^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 13: $205^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 14: $210^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 414 | Developer | Toner density l tion switching | correc- | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-7> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: Unchanged (Default) <br> 1: Approx. 0.1 wt\% lower <br> 2: Approx. 0.2 wt\% higher <br> 3: Approx. 0.5 wt\% higher <br> 4: Approx. 0.6 wt\% lower <br> 5: Approx. 0.8 wt\% lower <br> 6: Approx. 1.0 wt\% lower <br> 7: Approx. 1.3 wt\% lower | 1 |
| 424-0 | Fuser | Temperature drop switching | The first drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 15 \\ <2-60> \end{gathered}$ | M | This code is valid only when " 20 " is set to 08- | 4 |
| 424-1 |  | time setting in ready status | The second drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 15 \\ <2-60> \end{gathered}$ | M | 886. <br> Setting value $\times 1$ min.: | 4 |
| 424-2 |  | (Center thermistor) | The third drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 15 \\ <2-60> \end{gathered}$ | M | from 2 to 60 min . later | 4 |
| 424-3 |  |  | The fourth drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 15 \\ <2-60> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 425-0 | Fuser | Temperature drop switching | The first drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 15 \\ <2-60> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 425-1 |  | time setting in ready status | The second drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 15 \\ <2-60> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 425-2 |  | (Side thermistor) | The third drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 15 \\ <2-60> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 425-3 |  |  | The fourth drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 15 \\ <2-60> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 433-0 | Fuser | Temperature control lower | Center thermistor | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <0-12> \end{gathered}$ | M | $\begin{array}{ll} 0: 130^{\circ} \mathrm{C} & 1: 135^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\ \text { 2: } 140^{\circ} \mathrm{C} & 3: 145^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \end{array}$ | 4 |
| 433-1 |  | limit (Plain paper/ at ordinary temperature) | Side thermistor | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <0-12> \end{gathered}$ | M | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 4: } 150^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\ & \text { 6: } 160^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\ & \text { 7 } 155^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\ & \text { 8: } 170^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\ & \text { 10: } 180^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\ & \text { 9: } 175^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\ & \text { 11: } 185^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\ & \text { 12: } 120^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \end{aligned}$ | 4 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 437 | Fuser | Fuser roller temperature during printing (Center thermistor /Thick paper 2) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 9 \\ <0-14> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $7: 175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $190^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 13: $205^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 14: $210^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 438 | Fuser | Fuser roller temperature during printing (Center thermistor/OHP film) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 6 \\ <0-14> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $190^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 13: $205^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 14: $210^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 439 | Fuser | Pre-running time for first printing <br> (Thick paper 2) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-15> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 440 | Fuser | Pre-running time for first printing <br> (Plain paper) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-15> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 441 | Fuser | Pre-running time for first printing <br> (Thick paper 1) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-15> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 448 | Fuser | Fuser roller temperature in Energy Saving Mode (Side thermistor) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-13> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: OFF 1: $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $90^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $110^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $120^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $130^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 13: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 450 | Fuser | Fuser roller temperature during printing (Side thermistor/Plain paper) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 6 \\ <0-14> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $190^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 13: $205^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 14: $210^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 451 | Fuser | Fuser roller temperature during printing (Side thermistor/Thick paper 1) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 6 \\ <0-14> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $190^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 13: $205^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 14: $210^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 452 | Fuser | Fuser roller temperature during printing (Side thermistor/Thick paper 2) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 9 \\ <0-14> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $190^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 13: $205^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 14: $210^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 453 | Fuser | Fuser roller temperature during printing (Side thermistor/OHP film) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 6 \\ <0-14> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $190^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 13: $205^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 14: $210^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 455 | Image processing | Toner supply amount correction/Toner motor control | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-5> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the supply amount of the fresh toner (driving period of the toner motor) into the developer unit. | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 456-0 | Paper feeding | Feeding retry number setting (Drawer) | Plain paper | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <0-5> \end{gathered}$ | M | Sets the number of times of the feeding retry from the Drawer. | 4 |
| 456-1 |  |  | Others | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <0-5> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 459-0 | Paper feeding | Feeding retry number setting (bypass feed) | Plain paper | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <0-5> \end{gathered}$ | M | Sets the number of times of the feeding retry from the bypass tray. | 4 |
| 459-1 |  |  | Others | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <0-5> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 462 | ADF | Setting for switchback operation to copy mixedsized original on ADF |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Sets whether or not detecting the original length by transporting without scanning in reverse when finding A4-R/FOLIO paper. <br> 0: Invalid- Judges as A4-R without transporting in reverse with no scanning. <br> 1: Valid- Judges whether it is A4-R or FOLIO size by transporting in reverse with no scanning. <br> * The original is transported in reverse with no scanning when detecting LTLG size-paper in LT, regardless of this setting. | 1 |
| 463 | Scanner | Control status |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-6> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | 0 : Normal end <br> 1 : White level abnormality (G) <br> 2 : Peak detection abnormality (G) <br> 3 : Adjustment impossible (R) <br> 4 : Adjustment impossible (B) <br> 5 : Adjustment impossible (YG) <br> 6 : White level abnormality | 1 |
| 464 | Scanner | Scanner LED setting |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 0: LED ON } \\ & \text { 1: LED OFF } \end{aligned}$ | 1 |
| 471-0 | $\begin{gathered} \text { Paper } \\ \text { feeding } \end{gathered}$ | Paper size (Postcard) | feeding direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 148 \\ <100- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M | * Postcard is supported only for JPN model. | 10 |
| 471-1 |  |  | widthwise direction | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 100 \\ <100- \\ 432> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 10 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 476-0 | Fuser | Temperature drop setting during printing (Center thermistor/ Thick paper) | The first drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M | This code is valid only when " 20 " is set to 08 535. <br> Setting value $x-5^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ : from $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $-50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ Thick paper: Thick Paper1/Thick Paper2/OHP/Envelope | 4 |
| 476-1 |  |  | The second drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 476-2 |  |  | The third drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 476-3 |  |  | The fourth drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 478 | Laser | Judged number of polygonal motor rotation error (Normal rotation) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | Displays the error [CA1] when the set number of rotation error has been detected. <br> 0: 2 times 1: 12 times | 1 |
| 479 | Laser | Judged number of polygonal motor rotation error (At acceleration/deceleration) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0 : Waiting time for polygonal motor rotation overshooting 0.6 sec . <br> 1: Waiting time for polygonal motor rotation overshooting 2.2 sec . | 1 |
| 480 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper } \\ & \text { feeding } \end{aligned}$ | Default setting of paper source |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-4> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | 0 : A4/LT <br> 1: Drawer <br> 2: LCF <br> 3: Not used <br> 4: Not used | 1 |
| 481 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper } \\ & \text { feeding } \end{aligned}$ | Automatic change of paper source |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Sets whether or not changing the drawer automatically to the other drawer with the paper of the same size when paper in the selected drawer has run out. <br> 0: OFF <br> 1: ON | 1 |
| 482 | Paper feeding | Feeding retry setting |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 0: ON } \\ & 1: \text { OFF } \end{aligned}$ | 1 |
| 483 | Laser | Pre-running rotation of polygonal motor |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-2> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Sets whether or not switching the polygonal motor from the standby rotation to the normal rotation when the original is set on the ADF or the platen cover is opened. <br> 0 : Valid (when using ADF and the original is set manually) <br> 1: Invalid <br> 2: Valid (when using ADF only) | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 484 | Laser | Polygonal motor rotational status switching at the Auto Clear Mode | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Sets whether or not switching the polygonal motor from the normal rotation to the standby rotation at the Auto Clear Mode. <br> 0 : Valid 1: Invalid | 1 |
| 485 | Laser | Rotational status of polygonal motor on standby | ALL | JPN: 1 <br> Others: 0 $<0-1>$ | SYS | Sets the rotational status of polygonal motor on standby. <br> 0 : Rotated (The rotational speed is set at 08-490.) <br> 1: Stopped | 1 |
| 486 | Laser | Timing of auto-clearing of polygonal motor pre-running rotation | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-2> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Switches the polygonal motor to the standby rotation when a certain period of time has passed from the prerunning. At this code, the period to switch the status to the standby rotation is set. <br> 0: 15 sec. 1: 30 sec . <br> 2: 45 sec . <br> * This setting is effective when " 0 " or " 2 " is set at 08-483. | 1 |
| 489 | Laser | Polygonal motor rotation number on standby | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <0-5> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: 38,090.55 rpm <br> 1: $35,000 \mathrm{rpm}$ <br> 2: $30,000 \mathrm{rpm}$ <br> 3: $25,000 \mathrm{rpm}$ <br> 4: 20,000 rpm <br> 5: $10,000 \mathrm{rpm}$ | 1 |
| 490 | Laser | Polygonal motor rotation in the energy saving mode | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 0: Stopped } \\ & \text { 1: } 10,000 \mathrm{rpm} \end{aligned}$ | 1 |
| 502 | Image | Error diffusion and dither setting at photo mode | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Sets the image reproduction method at photo mode. <br> 0 : Error diffusion <br> 1: Dither | 1 |
| 515 | Fuser | Temperature setting of warming-up (Center thermistor) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 9 \\ <0-14> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $7: 175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $190^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 13: $205^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 14: $210^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 516 | Fuser | Temperature setting of warming-up (Side thermistor) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 9 \\ <0-14> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $190^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 13: $205^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 14: $210^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 520 | Fuser | Fuser roller temperature during printing (Center thermistor/Envelope) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 9 \\ <0-14> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $190^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 13: $205^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 14: $210^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 521 | Fuser | Fuser roller temperature during printing (Side thermistor/Envelope) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 9 \\ <0-14> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $190^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 13: $205^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 14: $210^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 523 | Fuser | Pre-running time for first printing <br> (Envelope) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 10 \\ <0-15> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: Invalid $1: 1 \mathrm{sec}$. 2: 2 sec. 4: 3 sec. 6: 4 sec. 5: 5 sec. 7: 7 sec. 8: 8 sec. 10: 9 sec. 11: 12 sec. 12: 14 sec. 13: 16 sec. 14: 18 sec. 15: 20 sec. | 1 |
| 525-0 | Fuser | Temperature drop switching time setting during printing (Center thermistor) | The first drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 20 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M | This code is valid only when " 20 " is set to 08535. <br> Setting value $\times 5 \mathrm{sec}$.: from 0 to $1,000 \mathrm{sec}$. later | 4 |
| 525-1 |  |  | The second drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 38 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 525-2 |  |  | The third drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 75 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 525-3 |  |  | The fourth drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 75 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 526 | Fuser | Pre-running time for first printing (OHP film) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-15> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 527-0 | Fuser | Temperature drop switching time setting during printing (Side thermistor) | The first drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 20 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M | This code is valid only when " 20 " is set to 08535. <br> Setting value x 5 sec .: from 0 to $1,000 \mathrm{sec}$. later | 4 |
| 527-1 |  |  | The second drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 30 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 527-2 |  |  | The third drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 48 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 527-3 |  |  | The fourth drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 75 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 535-0 | Fuser | Temperature drop control setting during printing (Temperature/ Time) | Plain paper | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 2 \\ <0-20> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0 : None <br> 1: Pattern 1 <br> 2: Pattern 2 <br> 3: Pattern 3 <br> 4: Pattern 4 <br> 5: Pattern 5 <br> 6: Pattern 6 <br> 7: Pattern 7 <br> 8: Pattern 8 <br> 9: Pattern 9 <br> 10: Pattern 10 <br> 11: Pattern 11 <br> 12: Pattern 12 <br> 13: Pattern 13 <br> 14: Pattern 14 <br> 15: Pattern 15 <br> 16: Pattern 16 <br> 17: Pattern 17 <br> 18: Pattern 18 <br> 19: Pattern 19 <br> 20: Manual adjustment | 4 |
| 535-1 |  |  | Thick paper | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 12 \\ <0-20> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 536-0 | Fuser | Temperature drop setting during printing (Center thermistor) | The first drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M | This code is valid only when " 20 " is set to 08 535. <br> Setting value $x-5^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ : from $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $-50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | 4 |
| 536-1 |  |  | The second drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 2 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 536-2 |  |  | The third drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 536-3 |  |  | The fourth drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 537-0 | Fuser | Temperature drop setting during printing (Side thermistor) | The first drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 537-1 |  |  | The second drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 2 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 537-2 |  |  | The third drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 537-3 |  |  | The fourth drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 538 | Image | Density default in image quality mode |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-7> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: AUTO 1: Light 3 <br> 2: Light 2 3: Light 1 <br> 4: Center 5: Dark 1 <br> 6: Dark 2 7: Dark 3 | 1 |
| 539-0 | Fuser | Temperature drop setting during printing (Side thermistor/ Thick paper) | The first drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M | This code is valid only when " 20 " is set to 08 535. <br> Setting value $x-5^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ : from $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $-50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | 4 |
| 539-1 |  |  | The second drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 2 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 539-2 |  |  | The third drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 539-3 |  |  | The fourth drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 540-0 | Fuser | Temperature drop switching time setting during printing (Thick paper/ Center thermistor) | The first drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 20 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M | This code is valid only when " 20 " is set to 08 535. <br> Setting value $\times 5 \mathrm{sec}$.: from 0 to 1,000 sec.later Thick paper: Thick Paper1/Thick Paper2/OHP/Envelope | 4 |
| 540-1 |  |  | The second drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 48 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 540-2 |  |  | The third drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 100 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 540-3 |  |  | The fourth drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 100 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 541-0 | Fuser | Temperature drop switching time setting during printing (Thick paper/ Side thermistor) | The first drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 20 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M | This code is valid only when " 20 " is set to 08 535. <br> Setting value $\times 5 \mathrm{sec}$.: from 0 to 1,000 sec.later Thick paper: Thick Paper1/Thick Paper2/OHP/Envelope | 4 |
| 541-1 |  |  | The second drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 48 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 541-2 |  |  | The third drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 100 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 541-3 |  |  | The fourth drop | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 100 \\ <0-200> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 550 | Image | Default setting of original mode |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-2> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 0: Text/Photo } \\ & \begin{array}{l} \text { 1: Text } \\ \text { 2: Photo } \end{array} \end{aligned}$ | 1 |
| 604 | User interface | Default setting for APS/ AMS |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-2> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | 0 : APS (Automatic Paper Selection) <br> 1: AMS (Automatic Magnification Selection) <br> 2: Not selected | 1 |
| 607 | User interface | Default setting of RADF mode |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | 0 : Continuous feeding (by pressing the [START] button) <br> 1: Single feeding (by setting original on the tray) | 1 |
| 611 | User interface | Book type original priority |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | 0: Left page to right page <br> 1: Right page to left page | 1 |
| 618 | User interface | Default setting when mixed size originals are set on ADF |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | 0: Scanned as all in same size <br> 1: Scanned as each original size | 1 |
| 641 | User interface | Automatic Sorting Mode setting (ADF) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 2 \\ <0,2> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: Invalid 2: SORT | 1 |
| 642 | User interface | Default setting of Sorter Mode |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0,1> \end{gathered}$ | M | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 0: SORT } \\ & \text { 1: GROUP } \end{aligned}$ | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 649 | User interface | Magazine sort setting | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | 0: Left page to right page <br> 1: Right page to left page | 1 |
| 650 | User interface | 2 in 1/4 in 1 page allocating order setting | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | 0 : Horizontal 1: Vertical | 1 |
| 651 | User interface | Printing format setting for Page Number | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 2 \\ <0-3> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Hyphen (with page number) /Dropout (with page number) <br> 0: OFF/OFF <br> 1: ON/OFF <br> 2: OFF/ON <br> 3: ON/ON <br> Note: <br> Hyphen printing format ON: -1- OFF: 1 | 1 |
| 655 | General | Reset the 05/08 codes | - | - | - | Returns the set value for the 05/08 code to its default value. However, various counter values of the 08 codes are not reset. | - |
| 672 | General | Initialization of department management information | - | - | SYS | Initializing of the department management information <br> Key in the code and press the [START] button to perform the initialization. | 3 |
| 688 | User interface | UI shortcut key | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ <0-10> \end{gathered}$ | - | 0 : Invalid <br> 1: Valid (REDUCE/ ENLARGE and ZOOM UP/DOWN only) <br> 2: Valid (Cassette paper size setting only) <br> 3: Valid (All, REDUCE/ ENLARGE, ZOOM UP/DOWN, and cassette paper size setting) |  |
| 695 | General | Toner remaining check function (supports embedded IC chip) | ALL | EUR: 1 <br> UC: 1 <br> CND: 0 <br> Other: 1 $<0-1>$ | M | Checks whether the toner cartridge is inserted or not. <br> 0 : Check function disabled (08-971 is automatically changed to " 3 : Toner near-empty detection disabled".) <br> 1: Check function enabled (08-971 is automatically changed to "1: Toner near empty threshold value (standard)".) | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 698 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Paper } \\ & \text { feeding } \end{aligned}$ | Limit function for the number of paper exit |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: OFF <br> 1: ON <br> Number set at 08-699 will be set as the limit number of paper exit. | 1 |
| 699 | Paper feeding | Limit number setting for paper exit |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 250 \\ <1-999> \end{gathered}$ | M | Sets the limit number of paper exit for 08-698 | 1 |
| 800-0 | Fuser | Temperature control lower limit (OHP film) | Center themistor | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 7 \\ <0-12> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $130^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $1: 135^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 6: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $7: 165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $9: 175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $120^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 4 |
| 800-1 |  |  | Side themistor | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <0-12> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 801-0 | Fuser | Temperature control lower limit (Thick paper 1) | Center themistor | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 7 \\ <0-12> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $130^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $135^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $3: 145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $5: 155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $7: 165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $120^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 4 |
| 801-1 |  |  | Side themistor | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <0-12> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 802-0 | Fuser | Temperature control lower limit (Thick paper 2) | Center themistor | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 11 \\ <0-12> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $130^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $135^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 4: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $5: 145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $7: 165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $9: 175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $120^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 4 |
| 802-1 |  |  | Side themistor | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 11 \\ <0-12> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 4 |
| 804-0 | Fuser | Temperature control lower limit (Envelope) | Center themistor | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 11 \\ <0-12> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $130^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 1: $135^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 4: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 5: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 8: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 7: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 4 |
| 804-1 |  |  | Side themistor | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 11 \\ <0-12> \end{gathered}$ | M | 8: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $9: 175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $120^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 4 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 805 | Charger | Main charger bias correction (Text/Photo/OHP film) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 98 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the main charger bias adjustment (05-210). | 1 |
| 806 | Charger | Main charger bias correction <br> (Toner Saving Mode/OHP film) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 98 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 807 | Charger | Main charger bias correction (Text/Photo/OHP film) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 98 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 808 | Charger | Main charger bias correction <br> (Text/OHP film) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 98 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 809 | Charger | Main charger bias correction <br> (Photo/OHP film) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 98 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 814 | Charger | Main charger bias correction (Text/Photo/ OHP film) | GDI | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 98 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 819 | Charger | Main charger bias correction (Text/Photo) | GDI | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 826 | Charger | Main charger bias correction <br> (Toner saving mode) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 830 | Transfer | Transfer transformer DC correction (C) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the transfer transformer DC output adjustment (05-221). | 1 |
| 831 | Separation | Separation transformer DC correction (C) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the separation transformer DC output adjustment (05-234). | 1 |
| 833 | Developer | Developer bias DC correction <br> (Text/Photo/OHP film) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 107 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the developer bias adjustment (05-205). | 1 |
| 834 | Developer | Developer bias DC correction <br> (Toner Saving Mode/OHP film) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 107 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 835 | Developer | Developer bias DC correction <br> (Text/Photo/OHP film) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 107 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 836 | Developer | Developer bias DC correction (Text/OHP film) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 107 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 837 | Developer | Developer bias DC correction <br> (Photo/OHP film) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 107 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 838 | Image processing | Switching of recycled toner saving control |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: Switched <br> 1: Not switched | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | Default <Acceptable value> | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 839 | Image processing | Correction by temperature/ humidity |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-3> \end{gathered}$ | M | Sets the correction by temperature/humidity. <br> 0 : All valid <br> 1: All invalid <br> 2: Valid only in autotoner sensor <br> 3: All valid except transfer and separation | 1 |
| 840 | Developer | Developer bias DC correction (Text/ Photo/OHP film) | GDI | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 107 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the developer bias adjustment (05-205). | 1 |
| 858 | Developer | Developer bias DC correction (Normal) | GDI | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 859 | Developer | Developer bias DC correction <br> (Toner saving mode) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the developer bias adjustment (05-205). | 1 |
| 860 | Developer | Developer bias DC correction (Normal) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the developer bias adjustment (05-205). | 1 |
| 861 | Developer | Developer bias DC correction (Text/Photo) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the developer bias adjustment (05-205). | 1 |
| 862 | Developer | Developer bias DC correction (Text) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the developer bias adjustment (05-205). | 1 |
| 863 | Developer | Developer bias DC correction (Photo) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the developer bias adjustment (05-205). | 1 |
| 864 | Charger | Main charger bias correction (Normal) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the main charger bias adjustment (05-210). | 1 |
| 865 | Charger | Main charger bias correction (Text/Photo) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the main charger bias adjustment (05-210). | 1 |
| 866 | Charger | Main charger bias correction (Text) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the main charger bias adjustment (05-210). | 1 |
| 867 | Charger | Main charger bias correction (Photo) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the main charger bias adjustment (05-210). | 1 |
| 868 | Transfer | Transfer transformer DC correction (H) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the transfer transformer DC output adjustment (05-220). | 1 |
| 869 | Transfer | Transfer transformer DC correction (L) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the transfer transformer DC output adjustment (05-222). | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items |  | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 870 | Separa- tion | Separation transformer DC correction (H) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the separation transformer DC output adjustment (05-233). | 1 |
| 871 | Separation | Separation transformer DC correction (L) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the separation transformer DC output adjustment (05-235). | 1 |
| 872 | Laser | Laser power correction (Normal) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the laser power adjustment (05-286). | 1 |
| 873 | Laser | Laser power correction (Text/Photo) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the laser power adjustment (05-286). | 1 |
| 875 | Laser | Laser power correction (Toner saving mode) |  | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the laser power adjustment (05-286). | 1 |
| 876 | Laser | Laser power correction (Text) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the laser power adjustment (05-286). | 1 |
| 877 | Laser | Laser power correction (Photo) |  | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 128 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M | Corrects the value of the laser power adjustment (05-286). | 1 |
| 883 | Laser | Laser power correction (Normal) | GDI | PRT | $\begin{gathered} 136 \\ <0-255> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 886 | Fuser | Temperature drop control setting in ready status (Temperature/Time) |  | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 4 \\ <0-20> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: None <br> 1: Pattern 1 <br> 2. Pattern 2 <br> 3: Pattern 3 <br> 4: Pattern 4 <br> 5: Pattern 5 <br> 6: Pattern 6 <br> 7: Pattern 7 <br> 8: Pattern 8 <br> 9: Pattern 9 <br> 10: Pattern 10 <br> 11: Pattern 11 <br> 12: Pattern 12 <br> 13: Pattern 13 <br> 14: Pattern 14 <br> 15: Pattern 15 <br> 16: Pattern 16 <br> 17: Pattern 17 <br> 18: Pattern 18 <br> 19: Pattern 19 <br> 20: Manual adjustment | 1 |
| 896-0 | Fuser | Temperature control lower limit <br> (Plain paper/ Low temperature) | Center themistor | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 7 \\ <0-12> \end{gathered}$ | M | 0: $130^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 1: $135^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 2: $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $3: 145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $155^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 6: $160^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 7: $165^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | 4 |
| 896-1 |  |  | Side themistor | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ <0-12> \end{gathered}$ | M | 8: $170^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $175^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 10: $180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 11: $185^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 12: $120^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 4 |
| 900 | Version | System firmware ROM version |  | ALL | - | - | T280SYOWxxx Displays only the "xxx" part of the above code. | 2 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 903 | General | Switching for SRU/CRU mode | ALL | JPN: 0 Other: 1 <0-1> | M | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 0:CRU } \\ & \text { 1:SRU } \end{aligned}$ | 1 |
| 904 | Paper feeding | APS (Auto Paper Selection) forced start | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0,2> \end{gathered}$ | - | 0: Press one time <br> 2: Invalid | 1 |
| 907 | Version | ADF ROM version | ALL | - | - | DF-XXXX | 2 |
| 921 | Version | FROM internal program | ALL | - | - | VTRxx.xxxW Displays the "xx.xxx" part of the above code as "xx-xxx". (Press the reproduction ratio buttons to switch the display between "xx-"and "xxx".) | 2 |
| 922 | Version | Function table data version | ALL | - | - | VXXX. ${ }^{\text {PXX }}$ X | 2 |
| 923 | Version | Language data version | ALL | - | - | VXXX.XXX X | 2 |
| 949 | General | Automatic interruption page setting during printing | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <0-100> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Sets the automatic interruption page. | 1 |
| 971 | General | Toner near empty threshold value | ALL | EUR: 1 <br> UC: 1 <br> CND: 3 <br> Other: 1 <0-3> | M | Performs adjustment for the toner nearempty detection timing. <br> 0 : Toner near empty threshold value (long) <br> 1: Toner near empty threshold value (standard) <br> 2: Toner near empty threshold value (short) <br> 3: Toner near-empty detection disabled <br> This code is automatically changed to " 3 " when the code 08-695 has been set at " 0 ". This code is automatically changed to "1" when the code 08-695 has been set at "1". | 1 |
| 995 | Version | Equipment number (serial number) display | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <20 \text { dig- } \\ \text { its }> \end{gathered}$ | M | The Equipment number can be entered in alphabets ( $\mathrm{A}-\mathrm{Z}=* 01-* 26$ ) and figures (0-9) within 20digits. | 11 |
| 1372 | Counter | Heater and energizing time accumulating counter Display/0 clearing | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts up the heater control time accumulated (when power of the equipment is ON) but does not count at the Sleep Mode. | 1 |
| 1378 | Counter | Counter for period of time fuser unit is at ready temperature | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts up the heater control time accumulated (when the equipment is at ready status). | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items | Function | ```Default <Accept- able value>``` | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 1380 | Counter | Counter for period of time fuser unit is at printing temperature | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts up the heater control time accumulated (during printing). | 1 |
| 1382 | Counter | Counter for period of time fuser unit is at energy saving temperature/Counter reset | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts up the heater control time accumulated (when the equipment is in the Energy Saving Mode). | 1 |
| 1385 | Counter | Number of output pages (Thick paper 1) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts up when the registration sensor is ON. | 1 |
| 1386 | Counter | Number of output pages (Thick paper 2) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts up when the registration sensor is ON. | 1 |
| 1388 | Counter | Number of output pages (OHP film) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts up when the registration sensor is ON. | 1 |
| 1390 | Paper feeding | Feeding retry counter (Drawer) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts the number of times of the feeding retry from the Drawer. | 1 |
| 1391 | Paper feeding | Feeding retry counter (PFU) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts the number of times of the feeding retry from the PFU. | 1 |
| 1394 | Paper feeding | Feeding retry counter (Bypass feed) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts the number of times of the feeding retry from the bypass tray. | 1 |
| 1396 | Paper feeding | Feeding retry counter upper limit value (Drawer) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | When the number of feeding retry (08-1390 to 08-1395) exceeds | 1 |
| 1397 | Paper feeding | Feeding retry counter upper limit value (PFU) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | the setting value, the feeding retry will not be performed subse- | 1 |
| 1400 | Paper feeding | Feeding retry counter upper limit value (Bypass feed) | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | quently. In case " 0 " is set as a setting value, however, the feeding retry continues regardless of the counter setting value. | 1 |
| 1410 | Counter | Counter for period of toner cartridge rotation time | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts up the period of rotation time of the toner cartridge. | 1 |
| 1411 | Counter | Counter for envelope | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ <8 \text { digits> } \end{gathered}$ | M | Counts up when the registration sensor is ON. | 1 |
| 1628-0 | Processing | Drum life correction switching of the drum reverse rotation amount | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 4 \\ <0-15> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |
| 1628-1 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Process- } \\ & \text { ing } \end{aligned}$ | Drum life correction switching of the normal drum rotation amount after the reverse rotation | ALL | $\begin{gathered} 9 \\ <0-15> \end{gathered}$ | M |  | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Classification | Items | Function | Default <Acceptable value> | RAM | Contents | Procedure |
| 1913 | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { Process- } \\ & \text { ing } \end{aligned}$ | The function clear LED blinks | PPC | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ <0-1> \end{gathered}$ | SYS | Blinks when the value is different from the present default value after copying (until auto clear or all clear.) <br> 0 : Invalid (Always off) <br> 1: Valid | 1 |

<<PM management setting code>>

- The following items are displayed or set by using sub-codes at PM management setting in the table below.
<Sub-codes>
0: Present number of output pages
- Means the present number of output pages.

1: Recommended number of output pages for replacement

- Means the recommended number of output pages for replacement.

2: Number of output pages at the last replacement

- Means the number of output pages at the last replacement.

3: Present driving counts

- Means the present drive counts (1 count = 2 seconds).

4: Recommended driving counts to be replaced

- Means the recommended drive counts for replacement (1 count = 2 seconds).

5: Driving counts at the last replacement

- Means the drive counts at the last replacement.

6: Present output pages for control

- Means the present number of output pages for controlling.

7: Present driving counts for control

- Means the present drive counts for controlling (1 count = 2 seconds).

8: Number of times replaced

- Counts up when clearing the counter of each unit in the PM Support Mode Screen.


## Notes:

- Sub-code 3 is equivalent to sub-code 7.

When the value of sub-code 3 is changed, the value of sub-code 7 is also updated and vice versa.

- Sub-code 0 is equivalent to sub-code 6.

When the value of sub-code 0 is changed, the value of sub-code 6 is also updated and vice versa.

- When " 0 " is set at one of sub-codes $0,3,6$ and 7 , the rest of them are automatically updated to "0".

| Items | PM management setting <Procedure 4> *Indicated in 8 digits | Date of previous replacement <Procedure 2> | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Upper Fuser roller brush | 361-0 to 8 | 362 | <Default values of code 361 (e-STUDIO 163/203)> <br> Sub-code 0, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7: 0/0 <br> Sub-code 1: 72,000/90,000 <br> Sub-code 4: 180,000/180,000 |
| Photoconductive drum | $1150-0$ to 8 | 1151 | <Default values of code 1150 (e-STUDIO 163/203)> <br> Sub-codes 0, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8: 0/0 <br> Sub-code 1: 72,000/90,000 <br> Sub-code 4: 180,000/180,000 |
| Drum cleaning blade | 1158-0 to 8 | 1159 | <Default values of code 1158 (e-STUDIO 163/203)> <br> Sub-codes 0, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8: 0/0 <br> Sub-code 1: 72,000/90,000 <br> Sub-code 4: 180,000/180,000 |
| Drum separation finger | 1172-0 to 8 | 1173 | <Default values of code 1172 (e-STUDIO 163/203)> <br> Sub-codes 0, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8: 0/0 <br> Sub-code 1: 72,000/90,000 <br> Sub-code 4: 180,000/180,000 |
| Main charger grid | 1174-0 to 8 | 1175 | <Default values of code 1174 (e-STUDIO 163/203)> <br> Sub-codes 0, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8: 0/0 <br> Sub-code 1: 72,000/90,000 <br> Sub-code 4: 180,000/180,000 |
| Needle electrode | 1182-0 to 8 | 1183 | <Default values of code 1182 (e-STUDIO 163/203)> <br> Sub-codes 0, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8: 0/0 <br> Sub-code 1: 72,000/90,000 <br> Sub-code 4: 180,000/180,000 |
| Ozone filter | 1198-0 to 8 | 1199 | <Default values of code 1198 (e-STUDIO 163/203)> <br> Sub-codes 0, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8: 0/0 <br> Sub-code 1: 72,000/90,000 <br> Sub-code 4: 180,000/180,000 |
| Developer material | 1200-0 to 8 | 1201 | <Default values of code 1200 (e-STUDIO 163/203)> <br> Sub-codes 0, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8: 0/0 <br> Sub-code 1: 72,000/90,000 <br> Sub-code 4: 180,000/180,000 |
| Transfer charger wire | 1214-0 to 8 | 1215 | <Default values of code 1214 (e-STUDIO 163/203)> <br> Sub-codes 0, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8: 0/0 <br> Sub-code 1: 72,000/90,000 <br> Sub-code 4: 180,000/180,000 |
| Separation charger wire | 1224-0 to 8 | 1225 | <Default values of code 1224 (e-STUDIO 163/203)> <br> Sub-codes 0, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8: 0/0 <br> Sub-code 1: 72,000/90,000 <br> Sub-code 4: 180,000/180,000 |
| Fuser roller | 1246-0 to 8 | 1247 | <Default values of code 1246 (e-STUDIO 163/203)> <br> Sub-codes 0, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8: 0/0 <br> Sub-code 1: 72,000/90,000 <br> Sub-code 4: 180,000/180,000 |


| Items | $\begin{array}{c}\text { PM management set- } \\ \text { ting <Procedure 4> } \\ \text { *Indicated in 8 digits }\end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{c}\text { Date of previous } \\ \text { replacement } \\ \text { <Procedure 2> }\end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{l}\text { Remarks }\end{array}$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| Pressure roller | $1250-0$ to 8 | 1251 | $\begin{array}{l}\text { <Default values of code 1250 } \\ \text { (e-STUDIO 163/203)> } \\ \text { Sub-codes 0, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8: 0/0 }\end{array}$ |
| Sub-code 1: 72,000/90,000 |  |  |  |
| Sub-code 4: 180,000/180,000 |  |  |  |$]$

## 3. ADJUSTMENT

### 3.1 Adjustment of Auto-Toner Sensor

When the developer material is replaced, adjust the auto-toner sensor in the following procedure.
<Procedure> (Adjustment Mode (05-200))
(1) Install the process unit into the equipment.

## Note:

Do not install the toner cartridge.
(2) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON.

The following message is displayed on a 7-segment LED.


Fig. 3-1
(3) Key in code [200] and press the [START] button.

The display on the 7 -segment LED changes as follows and the "density LEDs" lights from the left in order.


Fig. 3-2
(4) After about 2 minutes, all the "density LEDs" light and a value on the 7-segment LED automatically starts changing.


Fig. 3-3

## Note:

The output voltage of the auto-toner sensor ( 2.30 V in the above case).
The drum, developer unit, etc. are in operation.
(5) After a short time, the value on the 7 -segment LED becomes stable and all the "density LEDs" are turned off.
(6) Check if the value on the 7 -segment LED is within the range of 232 to 248 (i.e. the output voltage rage of the auto-toner sensor is 2.32 V to 2.48 V .).
(7) If the value is not within the range of 232 to 248 , press the reproduction ratio buttons ([25\%] / [200\%]) to adjust the value manually.
(8) Press the [INTERRUPT] button.

The drum, developer unit, etc. are stopped and the following is displayed on the 7 -segment LED.


Fig. 3-4
(9) Turn the power OFF.
(10) Install the toner cartridge.

### 3.2 Image Dimensional Adjustment

### 3.2.1 General description

There are several adjustment items in the image dimensional adjustment, as listed below. When adjusting these items, the following adjustment order should strictly be observed.

| Item to be adjusted |  |  | Code in mode 05 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 Paper alignment at the registration roller |  |  | $\begin{gathered} 450,451,458,460,461,462, \\ 463,464,469 \end{gathered}$ |
| 2 | Printer related adjustment | (a) Reproduction ratio of primary scanning direction (Fine adjustment of polygonal motor rotation speed) | 401 |
|  |  | (b) Primary scanning data laser writing start position | 411 |
|  |  | (c) Reproduction ratio of secondary scanning direction <br> (Fine adjustment of main motor rotation speed) | 421 |
|  |  | (d) Secondary scanning data laser writing start position | 441, 440, 442 |
| 3 | Scanner related adjustment | (a) Reproduction ratio of primary scanning direction | 405 |
|  |  | (b) Image location of primary scanning direction | 306 |
|  |  | (c) Reproduction ratio of secondary scanning direction | 340 |
|  |  | (d) Image location of secondary scanning direction | 305 |
|  |  | (e) Top margin | 430 |
|  |  | (f) Right margin | 432 |
|  |  | (g) Bottom margin | 433 |

[Procedure to key in adjustment values]
In accordance with the procedure described below, make adjustment of each adjustment item so that the measured values obtained from test copies satisfy the specification.


Fig. 3-5

### 3.2.2 Paper alignment at the registration roller

The aligning amount is adjusted by using the following codes in Adjustment Mode (05).

| Paper type | Weight | Drawer | PFU | Bypass feed |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Plain paper | $64-80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ <br> $17-20 \mathrm{lb}$. | $450\left({ }^{*} 1\right)$ | $451\left({ }^{*}\right)$ | $458\left({ }^{*} 1\right)$ |
| Thick paper 1 | $81-105 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ <br> $21-28 \mathrm{lb}$. | $469(* 1)$ | - | $460\left({ }^{*} 1\right)$ |
| Thick paper 2 | $106-163 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ <br> $29-43 \mathrm{lb}$. | $469(* 5)$ | - | $461\left({ }^{*} 1\right)$ |
| Thick paper 3 | $164-209 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ <br> $44-55 \mathrm{lb}$. | - | - | $462\left({ }^{*} 2\right)$ |
| OHP | - | - | - | $463\left({ }^{*} 3\right)$ |
| Envelope | - | - | $464\left({ }^{*} 4\right)$ |  |

Sub-code
(*1) 0: Long size 1: Middle size 2: Short size
(*2) 0: Long size 1: Middle size 2: Short size 3: Post card
(*3) 0: Long size of OHP film 1: Middle size of OHP film 2: Short size of OHP film
(*4) 0: Long size of Envelope 1: Middle size of Envelope 2: Short size of Envelope
(*5) 3: Long size 4: Middle size 5: Short size

## Notes:

1. Long size: 330 mm or longer (13.0 inches or longer)

Middle size: 220-239 mm (8.7-12.9 inches)
Short size: 219 mm or shorter (8.6 inches or shorter)
2. The adjustment of "Post card" is for Japan only.
(1) Perform the test print according to the following procedure.

(2) Check if any transfer void is occurring. If there is a transfer problem, try the values in descending order as " 31 " $\rightarrow$ " 30 " $\rightarrow$ " 29 "... until the transfer void disappears. At the same time, confirm if any paper jam occurs. Also, when the aligning amount has been increased, this may increase the scraping noise caused by the paper and the Mylar sheet as it is transported by the registration roller. If this scraping noise is annoying, try to decrease the value.


Fig. 3-6
(3) Perform the same procedure for all paper sources.

## Note:

When paper thinner than specified is used, paper jams may occur frequently at the registration section. In this case, it is advisable to change (or reduce) the aligning amount. However, if the aligning amount is reduced too much, this may cause the shift of leading edge position. So, when adjusting the aligning amount, try to choose the appropriate amount while confirming the leading edge position is not shifted.

* As a tentative countermeasure, the service life of the feed roller can be extended by increasing the aligning amount.


### 3.2.3 Printer related adjustment

[A] Reproduction ratio of primary scanning direction (Fine adjustment of polygonal motor rotation speed (Printer))
<Procedure>
(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment Mode)
(2) Press [1] $\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] $\rightarrow$ [PAPER FEED] (Select from 0: bypass, 1: drawer or 2: PFU.) $\rightarrow$ [START] $\rightarrow$ [START]. (A grid pattern with 10 mm squares is printed out. Use A3/LD from standard drawer of the equipment.)
(3) Check the grid pattern on the test chart printed out and measure the distance A from the 1st line to the 21st line of the grid pattern.
(4) Check if the distance $A$ is within $200 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$.
(5) If not, use the following procedure to change values and measure the distance A again.
(Adjustment Mode) $\rightarrow$ (Key in code [401]) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Key in a value (acceptable values: 0 to 255))
$\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory) $\rightarrow$ "AJ" is displayed
$\rightarrow$ Press [1] $\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] $\rightarrow$ Press [1] $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ [START] $\rightarrow$ (A grid pattern is printed out.)

* The larger the adjustment value is, the longer the distance A becomes (approx. $0.125 \mathrm{~mm} /$ step).


## [B] Primary scanning data laser writing start position (Printer)

<Procedure>
(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment Mode)
(2) Press [1] $\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] $\rightarrow$ [PAPER FEED] (Select from 0: bypass, 1: drawer or 2: PFU.) $\rightarrow$ [START] $\rightarrow$ [START]. (A grid pattern with 10 mm squares is printed out. Use A3/LD from standard drawer of the equipment.)
(3) Check the grid pattern on the test chart printed out and measure the distance B from the left edge of the paper to the 6th line of the grid pattern.
(4) Check if the distance $B$ is within $52 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$.
(5) If not, use the following procedure to change values and measure the distance $B$ again.
(Adjustment Mode) $\rightarrow$ (Key in the code [411]) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Key in a value (acceptable values: 0 to 255))
$\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory) $\rightarrow$ "AJ" is displayed
$\rightarrow$ Press [1] $\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] $\rightarrow$ Press [1] $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ [START] $\rightarrow$ (A grid pattern is printed out.)

* The larger the adjustment value is, the longer the distance $B$ becomes (approx. 0.05 mm / step).
(6) After the adjustment for the code 411 is completed, apply the same adjustment value for the code 410.
(Adjustment Mode) $\rightarrow$ (Key in the code [410]) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Key in the same value in the step 5 above)
$\rightarrow$ Press [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory).


## Note:

Make sure the first line of the grid pattern is printed out since the line is occasionally vanished.

## [C] Reproduction ratio of secondary scanning direction (Fine adjustment of main motor rotation speed (Copier/Printer))

<Procedure>
(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment mode)
(2) Press [1] $\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] $\rightarrow$ [PAPER FEED] (Select from 0: bypass, 1: drawer or 2: PFU.) $\rightarrow$ [START] $\rightarrow$ [START]. (A grid pattern with 10 mm squares is printed out. Use A3/LD from standard drawer of the equipment.)
(3) Check the grid pattern on the test chart printed out and measure the distance $C$ from the 10th line at the leading edge of the paper to the 30th line of the grid pattern.

* Normally, the 1st line of the grid pattern is not printed.
(4) Check if the distance $C$ is within $200 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$.
(5) If not, use the following procedure to change values and measure the distance $C$ again.
(Adjustment Mode) $\rightarrow$ (Key in code [421]) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Key in a value (acceptable values: 0 to 255))
$\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory) $\rightarrow$ "AJ" is displayed
$\rightarrow$ Press [1] $\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] $\rightarrow$ Press [1] $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ [START] $\rightarrow$ (A grid pattern is printed out.)
* The larger the adjustment value is, the longer the distance C becomes (approx. 0.125 mm / step).


## [D] Secondary scanning data laser writing start position

This adjustment has to be performed for each paper source. (If there is no paper source, skip this step.) The following table shows the order of the paper source to be adjusted, code, paper size and acceptable values.

| Order for <br> adjustment | Paper source | Code | Paper size | Acceptable <br> value | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Drawer | 440 | A3/LD | 0 to 40 |  |
| 2 | PFU | 441 | A4/LT | 0 to 40 |  |
| 3 | Bypass feed | 442 | A4/LT | 0 to 15 |  |

<Procedure>
(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment Mode)
(2) Press [1] $\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] $\rightarrow$ [PAPER FEED] (Select from 0: bypass, 1: drawer or 2: PFU.) $\rightarrow$ [START] $\rightarrow$ [START]. (A grid pattern with 10 mm squares is printed out.)
(3) Check the grid pattern on the test chart printed out and measure the distance $D$ from the leading edge of the paper to the 6th line of the grid pattern.

* Normally, the 1st line of the grid pattern is not printed.
(4) Check if the distance $D$ is within $52 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$.
(5) If not, use the following procedure to change values and measure the distance D again.
(Adjustment Mode) $\rightarrow$ (Key in the code shown above) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Key in an acceptable value shown above)
$\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory) $\rightarrow$ "AJ" is displayed
$\rightarrow$ Press [1] $\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] $\rightarrow$ Press [1] $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ [START] $\rightarrow$ (A grid pattern is printed out.)
* The larger the adjustment value is, the longer the distance $D$ becomes (approx. $0.4 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step}$ ).


Fig. 3-7 Grid pattern
<Procedure>
[0] [5] [Power ON] $\rightarrow$ [1] $\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT]
A: 05-401 (Drawer, A3/LD)
$\rightarrow 200 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}(0.125 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step})$
B: 05-411 (Drawer, A3/LD)
$\rightarrow 52 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ ( $0.05 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step}$ )
$\rightarrow$ Key in the same value for 05-410.
C: 05-421 (Drawer, A3/LD) $\quad \rightarrow 200 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}(0.125 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step})$
D: $\quad 05-440$ (Drawer, A3/LD), 441 (PFU, A4/LT), 442 (Bypass feed, A4/LT)
$\rightarrow 52 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}(0.4 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step})$

### 3.2.4 Scanner related adjustment

[A] Reproduction ratio adjustment of the primary scanning direction <Procedure>
(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment Mode)
(2) Place a ruler on the original glass (along the direction from the rear to the front of the equipment).
(3) Press [0] and [9] simultaneously to enter the normal mode.
(4) Make a copy at the mode of A3 (LD), $100 \%$ and standard drawer of the equipment.
(5) Press [0] and [5] simultaneously to enter the adjustment mode.
(6) Measure the distance A from 10 mm to 270 mm of the copied image of the ruler.
(7) Check if the distance $A$ is within the range of $260 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$.
(8) If not, use the following procedure to change values and repeat the steps (3) to (7) above.
(Adjustment Mode) $\rightarrow$ (Key in the code [405]) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Key in a value (acceptable values: 0 to 255))
$\rightarrow$ Press the [INTERRUPT] button (stored in memory). $\rightarrow$ ("AJ" is displayed.)

* The larger the adjustment value is, the higher the reproduction ratio and the longer the distance A become (approx. $0.125 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step}$ ).


Fig. 3-8

## [B] Image position adjustment of the primary scanning direction

 <Procedure>(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment Mode)
(2) Place a ruler on the original glass with its leading edge pushed against the rear side and its side along the original scale on the left.
(3) Press [0] and [9] simultaneously to enter the normal mode.
(4) Make a copy at the mode of A3 (LD), $100 \%$ and standard drawer of the equipment.
(5) Press [0] and [5] simultaneously to enter the adjustment mode.
(6) Measure the distance B from the left edge of the paper to 10 mm of the copied image of the ruler.
(7) Check if the distance $B$ is within the range of $10 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$.
(8) If not, use the following procedure to change values and repeat the steps (3) to (7) above.
(Adjustment Mode) $\rightarrow$ (Key in the code [306]) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Key in a value (acceptable values: 121 to 136))
$\rightarrow$ Press the [INTERRUPT] button (stored in memory). $\rightarrow$ ("AJ" is displayed.)

* The smaller the adjustment value is, the more the image is shifted to the left and the distance $B$ become narrower ( $0.169 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step}$ ).


Fig. 3-9

## [C] Reproduction ratio adjustment of the secondary scanning direction <Procedure>

(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment Mode)
(2) Place a ruler on the original glass with its leading edge pushed against the original scale on the left.
(3) Press [0] and [9] simultaneously to enter the normal mode.
(4) Make a copy at the mode of A3 (LD), $100 \%$ and standard drawer of the equipment.
(5) Press [0] and [5] simultaneously to enter the adjustment mode.
(6) Measure the distance C from 200 mm to 400 mm of the copied image of the ruler.
(7) Check if the distance $C$ is within the range of $200 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$.
(8) If not, use the following procedure to change values and repeat the steps (3) to (7) above.
(Adjustment Mode) $\rightarrow$ (Key in the code [340]) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Key in a value (acceptable values: 76 to 181))
$\rightarrow$ Press the [INTERRUPT] button (stored in memory). $\rightarrow$ ("AJ" is displayed.)

* The smaller the adjustment value is, the lower the reproduction ratio becomes $(0.189 \mathrm{~mm} /$ step).


Feeding direction

Fig. 3-10

## [D] Image position adjustment of the secondary scanning direction <Procedure>

(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment Mode)
(2) Place a ruler on the original glass with its leading edge pushed against the original scale on the left.
(3) Press [0] and [9] simultaneously to enter the normal mode.
(4) Make a copy at the mode of A3 (LD), $100 \%$ and standard drawer of the equipment.
(5) Press [0] and [5] simultaneously to enter the adjustment mode.
(6) Measure the distance $D$ from the leading edge of the paper to 10 mm of the copied image of the ruler.
(7) Check if the distance $D$ is within the range of $10 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$.
(8) If not, use the following procedure to change values and repeat the steps (3) to (7) above.
(Adjustment Mode) $\rightarrow$ (Key in the code [305]) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Key in a value (acceptable values: 51 to 206))
$\rightarrow$ Press the [INTERRUPT] button (stored in memory). $\rightarrow$ ("AJ" is displayed.)

* The larger the adjustment value is, the more the image is shifted to the trailing edge (0.064 $\mathrm{mm} /$ step).


Fig. 3-11

## [E] Top margin

<Procedure>
(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment Mode)
(2) Press [2] $\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] $\rightarrow$ [PAPER FEED] (Select from 0: bypass, 1: drawer or 2: PFU.) $\rightarrow$ [START] $\rightarrow$ [START] (A solid black pattern (whole area) is printed out. Print out 2 sheets in A3/LD size.).
(3) Place the paper printed out in step (2) to cover the whole area of the original glass.
(4) Press [0] and [9] simultaneously to enter the normal mode.
(5) Make a copy at the mode of A3/LD, $100 \%$, Text/Photo and standard drawer of the equipment.
(6) Press [0] and [5] simultaneously to enter the adjustment mode.
(7) Measure the blank area E at the leading edge of the copied image.
(8) Check if the blank area $E$ is within the range of $3 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$.
(9) If not, use the following procedure to change values and repeat the steps (4) to (8) above.
(Adjustment Mode) $\rightarrow$ (Key in the code [430]) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Key in a value (acceptable values: 0 to 255))
$\rightarrow$ Press the [INTERRUPT] button (stored in memory). $\rightarrow$ ("AJ" is displayed.)

* The larger the adjustment value is, the wider the blank area becomes (approx. $0.04 \mathrm{~mm} /$ step).


Fig. 3-12

## [F] Right margin

<Procedure>
(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment Mode)
(2) Press [2] $\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] $\rightarrow$ [PAPER FEED] (Select from 0: bypass, 1: drawer or 2: PFU.) $\rightarrow$ [START] $\rightarrow$ [START] (A solid black pattern (whole area) is printed out. Print out 2 sheets in A3/LD size.).
(3) Place the paper printed out in step (2) to cover the whole area of the original glass.
(4) Press [0] and [9] simultaneously to enter the normal mode.
(5) Make a copy at the mode of A3/LD, $100 \%$, Text/Photo and standard drawer of the equipment.
(6) Press [0] and [5] simultaneously to enter the adjustment mode.
(7) Measure the blank area $F$ at the right side of the copied image.
(8) Check if the blank area $F$ is within the range of $2 \pm 1.0 \mathrm{~mm}$.
(9) If not, use the following procedure to change values and repeat the steps (4) to (8) above.
(Adjustment Mode) $\rightarrow$ (Key in the code [432]) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Key in a value (acceptable values: 0 to 255))
$\rightarrow$ Press the [INTERRUPT] button (stored in memory). $\rightarrow$ ("AJ" is displayed.)

* The larger the adjustment value is, the wider the blank area at the right side becomes (approx. $0.04 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step}$ ).


Fig. 3-13

## [G] Bottom margin

## <Procedure>

(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment Mode)
(2) Press [2] $\rightarrow$ [INTERRUPT] $\rightarrow$ [PAPER FEED] (Select from 0: bypass, 1: drawer or 2: PFU.) $\rightarrow$ [START] $\rightarrow$ [START] (A solid black pattern (whole area) is printed out. Print out 2 sheets in A3/LD size.).
(3) Place the paper printed out in step (2) to cover the whole area of the original glass.
(4) Press [0] and [9] simultaneously to enter the normal mode.
(5) Make a copy at the mode of A3/LD, $100 \%$, Text/Photo and standard drawer of the equipment.
(6) Press [0] and [5] simultaneously to enter the adjustment mode.
(7) Measure the blank area $G$ at the trailing edge of the copied image.
(8) Check if the blank area G is within the range of $2 \pm 1.0 \mathrm{~mm}$.
(9) If not, use the following procedure to change values and repeat the steps (4) to (8) above.
(Adjustment Mode) $\rightarrow$ (Key in the code [433]) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Key in a value (acceptable values: 0 to 255))
$\rightarrow$ Press the [INTERRUPT] button (stored in memory). $\rightarrow$ ("AJ" is displayed.)

* The larger the adjustment value is, the wider the blank area at the trailing edge becomes (approx. $0.04 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step}$ ).


Fig. 3-14

### 3.3 Image Quality Adjustment (Copying Function)

### 3.3.1 Density adjustment

The center density and the density variation controlled by density adjustment keys can be adjusted as follows.
< Adjustment Mode (05) >

| Original mode |  |  | Item to be adjusted | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| Text/Photo | Photo | Text |  |  |
| 503 | 501 | 504 | Manual density mode center <br> value | The larger the value is, the darker the <br> image becomes. <br> Acceptable values: 0 to 255 |
| 505 | 506 | 507 | Manual density mode light <br> step value | The larger the value is, the lighter the <br> light side becomes. <br> Acceptable values: 0 to 255 |
| 508 | 509 | 510 | Manual density mode dark <br> step value | The larger the value is, the darker the <br> dark side becomes. <br> Acceptable values: 0 to 255 |
| 514 | 512 | 515 | Automatic density mode | The larger the value is, the darker the <br> image becomes. <br> Acceptable values: 0 to 255 |

Make a test copy and compare the image obtained with the current settings; if necessary, make adjustment using the following procedure.
<Procedure>
(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON.
(2) Key in a code and press the [START] button.
(3) Key in an adjustment value.
(To correct the keyed-in value, press the [CLEAR] button.)
(4) Press the [INTERRUPT] button to store the value. $\rightarrow$ The equipment goes back to the ready state.
(5) Let the equipment restarted and perform copying job.
(6) If the desired image density has not been attained, repeat step (2) to (5).

### 3.3.2 Gamma slope adjustment

Gamma slope is adjustable with the following codes.
< Adjustment Mode (05) >

| Original mode |  |  | Item to be adjusted | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Text/Photo | Photo | Text |  | Gamma slope adjustment |
| 593 | 594 | 595 | 1 to 9: Select the gamma slope <br> angle. (The larger the value <br> is, the larger the angle <br> becomes.) |  |

<Procedure>
Procedure is same as that of $\mathbb{P}$. 3-19 "3.3.1 Density adjustment".

### 3.3.3 Sharpness adjustment

If you want to make copy images look softer or sharper, perform the following adjustment.
< Adjustment Mode (05) >

| Original mode |  |  |  | Item to be adjusted | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| Text/ <br> Photo | Photo | Text | Photo <br> (Dither) |  |  |
| 620 | 621 | 622 | 623 | Sharpness adjustment | Key in the following values depend- <br> ing on the original mode. <br> One's place <br> Selecting a filter shape |
| Ten's place <br> 0: Use Default value <br> 1to 9: Change intensity <br> (The larger the value is, the sharper <br> the image becomes.) |  |  |  |  |  |

- Example of value entry in case the mode is "Text/Photo".
$2 \frac{1}{L}$ Fixed value for Text/ Photo mode Key in a value 0 to 9


## Note:

When the value " 0 " is keyed in at the ten's digit, the value is not displayed on LCD screen.

Make a test copy and compare the image obtained with the current settings; if necessary, make adjustment using the following procedure.
<Procedure>
Procedure is same as that of P. 3-19 "3.3.1 Density adjustment".

### 3.3.4 Setting range correction

The values of the background peak / text peak in the range correction can be switched to "varied" or "fixed" in the following codes.
If they are fixed, the range correction is performed with standard values.
The values of the background peak affect the reproduction of the background density and the values of the text peak affect that of the text density.
< Adjustment Mode (05) >

| Original mode |  |  | Item to be adjusted | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Text/Photo | Photo | Text |  |  |
| 570 | 571 | 572 | Range correction for original manually set on the original glass | The following are the default values set for each original mode. Text/Photo: 12, Photo: 12, Text: 22 Each digit stands for: |
| 693 | 694 | 695 | Range correction for original set on the ADF | One's place: Automatic density mode Ten's place: Manual density mode The setting conditions possible are as follows: |

Make a test copy and compare the image obtained with the current settings; if necessary, make adjustment using the following procedure.
<Procedure>
Procedure is same as that of P. 3-19 "3.3.1 Density adjustment".

### 3.3.5 Setting range correction (Adjustment of background peak)

The levels of the background peak for the range correction can be set at the following codes.
< Adjustment Mode (05) >

| Original mode |  |  | Item to be adjusted | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| Text/Photo | Photo | Text |  | Background peak for range <br> correction |
| 532 | 533 | 534 | When the value increases, the back- <br> ground (low density area) of the <br> image is not output. <br> Acceptable values: 0 to 255 <br> (Default: Text/Photo: 32, Photo: 22, <br> Text: 46) |  |

Make a test copy and compare the image obtained with the current settings; if necessary, make adjustment using the following procedure.
<Procedure>
Procedure is same as that of $\mathbb{C l}$ P. 3-19 "3.3.1 Density adjustment".

### 3.3.6 Adjustment of smudged/faint text

The smudged/faint text can be set at the following codes.
< Adjustment Mode (05) >

| Original mode | Item to be adjusted | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Text/Photo |  | Adjustment of smudged/faint <br> spotted text |
| 648 | When the value increases, the faint text is improved. <br> When the value decreases, the smudged text is <br> improved. <br> Acceptable values: 0 to 4 (Default: 3) <br> Note: <br> Remember the image specifications and life <br> span of the replacing parts may not meet the <br> standard when the setting value is changed <br> from the default value. |  |

Make a test copy and compare the image obtained with the current settings; if necessary, make adjustment using the following procedure.
<Procedure>
Procedure is same as that of $\mathbb{C l}$ P-19 "3.3.1 Density adjustment".

### 3.3.7 Adjustment of image density

The image density level can be set at the following codes.
< Adjustment Mode (05) >

| Code | Item to be adjusted | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 667-0 to 4 | Adjustment of image density | When the value is decreased, text becomes lighter. Acceptable values: 0 to 63 <br> Notes: <br> 1. Set not to reverse the large and small number of the setting value corresponding to the sub code. <br> Ex.) When substituting the setting value for $667-0$ with A0, $\cdot \cdot, 667-4$ with A4: A0 A1 A2 A3 A4 <br> 2. Remember that the image specifications and life span of the replacing parts may not meet the standard when the setting value is changed from the default value. |

<Procedure>
(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON .
(2) Key in the code " 667 " and press the [START] button.
(3) Key in the sub code ( $0,1,2,3$ or 4 ), and press the [START] button.
(4) Key in an adjustment value.
(To correct the keyed-in value, press the [CLEAR] button.)
(5) Press the [INTERRUPT] button to store the value in memory. The equipment goes back to the ready state.
(6) For resetting the value, repeat step (2) to (5).
(7) Turn the power OFF and then back ON to perform printing job.
(8) If the desired image density has not been attained, repeat step (2) to (7).

### 3.4 Image Quality Adjustment (Printing Function)

### 3.4.1 Adjustment of smudged/faint text

The smudged/faint text can be set at the following codes.
< Adjustment Mode (05) >

| Language |  | Remarks |  |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| PS | PCL |  |  |
| 654 | 655 | When the value increases, the smudged text is improved. When the value <br> decreases, the faint text is improved. <br> Acceptable values: 0 to 9 (Default: 5$)$ |  |

<Procedure>
(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON.
(2) Key in a code and press the [START] button.
(3) Key in an adjustment value.
(To correct the keyed-in value, press the [CLEAR] button.)
(4) Press the [INTERRUPT] button to store the value in memory. The equipment goes back to the ready state.
(5) Turn the power OFF and then back ON to perform printing job.
(6) If the desired text density has not been attained, repeat step (2) to (5).

### 3.4.2 Adjustment of image density

The image density level is adjustable both at standard and toner saving modes.
< Adjustment Mode (05) >

| Toner mode |  | Item to be adjusted | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| GDI | PS/PCL |  |  |
| 672-0 to 4 | 676-0 to 4 | Adjustment of image density | When the value is decreased, text becomes lighter. <br> Acceptable values: 0 to 63 <br> Notes: <br> 1. Set not to reverse the large and small number of the setting value corresponding to the sub code. Ex.) When substituting the setting value for 672-0 with A0, $\cdots$, 6724 with A4: A0 A1 A2 A3 A4 <br> 2. Remember that the image specifications and life span of the replacing parts may not meet the standard when the setting value is changed from the default value. |

## <Procedure>

(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON.
(2) Key in a code and press the [START] button.
(3) Key in the sub code ( $0,1,2,3$ or 4 ), and press the [START] button.
(4) Key in an adjustment value.
(To correct the keyed-in value, press the [CLEAR] button.)
(5) Press the [INTERRUPT] button to store the value in memory. The equipment goes back to the ready state.
(6) For resetting the value, repeat step (2) to (5).
(7) Turn the power OFF and then back ON to perform printing job.
(8) If the desired image density has not been attained, repeat step (2) to (7).

### 3.5 Adjustment of High-Voltage Transformer

When replacing the high-voltage transformer, checking each output adjustment of main charger, developer bias, transfer charger and separation charger is needed.

### 3.5.1 Adjustment

## [1] Preparation

| Items to check |  | Developer Bias | Main Charger | Transfer Charger | Separation Charger |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Process Unit |  | Take off from the equipment. (Not used) |  |  |  |
| High-Voltage Transformer Jig |  | Install the high-voltage transformer jig in the equipment. <br> Note: <br> Connect the green cable of the high-voltage transformer jig to ground on the equipment frame. Refer to $\mathbb{C l}$ P. 3-28 "[A] Installation of the high-voltage transformer jig". |  |  |  |
| Digital Tester | (+) terminal | Connect with the black cable of the high-voltage transformer jig. | Connect with the red cable (thick line) of the high-voltage transformer jig. | Connect with the red cable (thin line) of the high-voltage transformer jig. |  |
|  | (-) terminal | Connect with the white cable of the high-voltage transformer jig. |  |  |  |
|  | Function switch | DC |  |  |  |
|  | Full-scale (range) | 1000 V |  | 2 V |  |
|  | Remarks | Use a digital tester with an input resistance of $10 \mathrm{M} \Omega$ (RMS value) or higher. |  |  |  |
| How to turn ON the power |  | Attach the door switch jig and start with the adjustment mode [05] while the front cover opened. Then press the front cover opening/closing switch. |  |  |  |
| Note |  | Refer to [l] P. 3-30 "[B] Connection for developer bias adjustment". | Refer to Nㅣ P. 3-30 "[C] Connection for main charger adjustment". | Refer to nection for transfer/separation charger adjustment". |  |

[A] Installation of the high-voltage transformer jig
(1) Open the bypass tray, ADU and transfer cover.
(2) Open the front cover and take off the toner cartridge.
(3) Disconnect 1 connector. Loosen 2 screws and pull out the process unit.

## Note:

Be careful not to let the connector and the harness be caught when installing the process unit after adjustment.


Fig. 3-15
(4) Install the high-voltage transformer jig and fix it with 2 screws.

## Note:

Be careful not to let the connector and the harness be caught.


Fig. 3-16
(5) Fix the green cable of the high-voltage transformer jig to the frame of the equipment.


Fig. 3-17
(6) Install the cover open switch release jig for service.
(7) Close the transfer cover.


Fig. 3-18
[B] Connection for developer bias adjustment


Fig. 3-19

## [C] Connection for main charger adjustment



Fig. 3-20
[D] Connection for transfer/separation charger adjustment


Fig. 3-21

## [ 2 ] Operation

## Note:

When adjusting output of high-voltage transformer, make sure to use the high-voltage transformer jig.

Connect the digital testers as described in "[1] Preparation", and follow the procedure on the next page to adjust the output from the main charger, developer bias charger, transfer charger and separation charger.


Fig. 3-22

### 3.5.2 Precautions

## [1] Developer bias

## Note for adjustment

Adjust the developer bias if fogging occurs over the entire image even though the main charger grid voltage and toner density are appropriate. However, the following may occur if the developer bias is lowered too much:

- Image contrast becomes low.
- Image is patchy or blurred.
- The carrier in the developer material adheres to the photoconductive drum, causing scratches around the cleaner.


## [2] Transfer

## Items to check before adjustment

Blotched image or poor transfer can be also caused by matters other than defective adjustment of transfer output. Check the following items before adjusting the transfer charger. If there is no problem, adjust the output of the transfer charger.

- Is the charger wire incorrectly installed or dirty? Is the transfer guide deformed?
- Is the process unit properly installed? Is the developer magnetic brush in contact with the drum? Is the process unit worked correctly? Is the toner density low?
- Is the copy paper fed straight? Is the copy paper abnormally moist?
- Is the rotation of the registration roller normal?
- Is the separation output different from the set value?
- Is the developer bias value an appropriate one?
- Are the transfer/separation charger case grounded? Is the high-voltage transformer grounded?


## Note for adjustment

When blotched image appear:

- If blotched image appear in halftone areas, lower the transfer output value. Remember that transfer performance becomes low if the transfer output value is lowered too much.


## When poor transfer occurs:

Increase the transfer output value under the following conditions. Remember that blotched image appear if the transfer output value is increased too much.

- Transfer is poor even though the charger wire is not dirty.
- Thick paper has been frequently used.

The adjustment code varies according to where blotched image and poor transfer occur. Select the required adjustment code while referring to the following diagram.


Fig. 3-23

## [3] Separation

## Items to check before adjustment

Poor paper separation from the drum can be also caused by matters other than defective adjustment of the separation output. Check the following items before making an adjustment. If there is no problem, adjust the output of the separation charger.

- Is the charger wire incorrectly installed or dirty?
- Is the process unit installed properly? Is the developer magnetic brush in contact with the drum? Is the process unit worked correctly? Is the toner density low?
- Is the copy paper fed straight? Is the copy paper abnormally moist?
- Is the rotation of the registration roller normal?
- Is the output of the main charger normal?
- Is the developer bias an appropriate value?
- Is the transfer output different from the set value?
- Is the transfer/separation charger case grounded? Is the high-voltage transformer grounded?
- Is the separation finger in contact with the drum surface?


## Note for adjustment

When poor paper separation occurs:
Increase the separation output value under the following conditions. Remember that if the separation output value is increased too much, blotched image occurs and separation performance becomes low.

- Poor separation occurs even though the charger wire is not dirty.
- Thin paper has been frequently used.


## When poor transfer occurs:

- Decrease the separation output value when poor transfer occurs. Remember that the separation performance becomes low if the separation output value is decreased too much.

The adjustment code varies according to where poor paper separation and poor transfer occur. Select the required adjustment code while referring to the following diagram.


Fig. 3-24

* Adjustment code 235 performs the adjustment for 2 areas.


### 3.6 Adjustment of the Scanner Section

### 3.6.1 CIS unit

[A] Replacing the CIS unit

- The CIS unit must not be readjusted and some part of its components must not be replaced in the field since the unit is precisely adjusted. If any of the components is defective, replace the whole unit.
- Handle the CIS unit with care not to contaminate the lens with fingerprints or such.


### 3.6.2 CIS unit drive belt-1

Adjust the tension of the CIS unit drive belt-1 when installing it.
<Procedure>
(1) Install the CIS unit drive belt-1 after the tension bracket fixing screw are loosened.
(2) Tighten the tension bracket fixing screw.


Fig. 3-25

### 3.6.3 Scan motor (CIS unit drive belt-2)

When installing the scan motor and CIS unit drive belt-2, adjust the tension of the CIS unit drive belt-2 with the belt tension jig.
<Procedure>
(1) Temporarily fix screws A and B.


Fig. 3-26
(2) Hook the belt tension jig on the motor bracket and frame.


Fig. 3-27
(3) Tighten screws $A$ and $B$ where the scan motor pulled by the belt tension jig stops.

### 3.7 Adjustment of the Paper Feeding System

### 3.7.1 Sheet sideways deviation caused by paper feeding

## <Procedure>

The center of the printed image shifts to the front The center of the printed image shifts to the rear side. $\rightarrow$ Move the guide to the front side (Arrow (A) direction in the lower figure). side. $\rightarrow$ Move the guide to the rear side (Arrow (B) direction in the lower figure).


Fig. 3-28


Fig. 3-29

1) Loosen the screen.
2) Move the entire guide to the front or rear side.
3) Tighten the screw.


Fig. 3-30

### 3.8 Adjustment of Developer Unit

### 3.8.1 Doctor-to-sleeve gap

Adjustment tool to use: Doctor-sleeve jig
<Procedure>
(1) Perform the adjustment code "05-280".
(2) Take out the process unit from the equipment.
(3) Take out the developer unit from the process unit.
(4) Remove 2 screws and take off the developer unit upper cover and discharge the developer material.

## Note:

Discharge the developer material from the rear side, being careful not to let it be scattered on the gear.


Fig. 3-31
(5) Turn the adjustment screw to widen the gap so that the jig can be inserted in it. (Turning the screw clockwise widens the gap)


Fig. 3-32
(6) Insert the gauge with the thickness " 0.45 " of the doctor sleeve jig into the gap between the developer sleeve and doctor blade after lifting up the toner scattering prevention sheet.
Adjust the screws with the doctor blade to push the doctor sleeve jig lightly.


Fig. 3-33
(7) Insert the gauge " 0.40 " of the doctor sleeve jig into the gap between the developer sleeve and doctor blade. Confirm that the jig moves smoothly to the front and rear side, and the gauge " 0.50 " cannot be inserted into the gap.


Fig. 3-34
(8) Confirm that the side seals are attached on the toner scattering prevention sheet.


Fig. 3-35
(9) Attach the developer unit upper cover and tighten 2 screws.

## Note:

After the developer material has been replaced, adjust the auto-toner sensor. (See led P. 3-1 "3.1 Adjustment of Auto-Toner Sensor".)


Fig. 3-36

### 3.9 Adjustment of the ADF (MR-2017)

### 3.9.1 Adjustment of ADF Position

Perform this adjustment when the ADF is not installed in the correct position.

## Note:

Check if the image adjustment for the equipment is performed properly before this adjustment of the ADF.
[A] Checking
(1) Open the ADF and install 2 positioning pins (the positioning pins are installed to the back side of the hinge which is on the left side of the ADF).


Fig. 3-37


Fig. 3-38
(3) Close the ADF and check if the positioning pins fit the holes on the ADF.


Fig. 3-39

## [B] Adjustment

If the pins cannot be fitted into the holes, perform the adjustment according to the following procedure.
(1) Remove the right-hand hinge screw at the rear side.


Fig. 3-40
(2) Loosen the left-hand hinge screw at the rear side.


Fig. 3-41
(3) Loosen the hinge screws at the front side.


Fig. 3-42
(4) Position the pins with the holes on the ADF by moving it so that the pins fit into the holes when the ADF is closed.


Fig. 3-43
(5) Tighten the left-hand hinge screw at the rear side.


Fig. 3-44
(6) Loosen the hole position adjustment screws on the right hand side.


Fig. 3-45
(7) Match the screw hole positions.


Fig. 3-46
(8) Install the right-hand hinge screw at the rear side.


Fig. 3-47
(9) Loosen the hinge screws at the front side.


Fig. 3-48
(10) Place the platen sheet on the original glass and align it to the top left corner. Close the ADF gently and open it to check if the platen sheet is attached properly.


Fig. 3-49

### 3.9.2 Adjustment of ADF Height

## Note:

Check if the image adjustment for the equipment is performed properly before this adjustment of the ADF.

## [A] Checking

(1) Close the ADF.
(2) Light the exposure lamp.

- Turn the power ON while pressing [0] and [4] simultaneously.
- Key in [261], press the [START] button, and then wait until the CIS unit stops.
- Key in [267] and then press the [START] button. The exposure lamp is turned ON for a given length of time.
(3) Visually check the gap between platen guide holder "A" and upper surface of the original glass " $B$ " from the left hand side of the equipment. If the value is not within the tolerance, perform the adjustment according to the following procedure.
[Tolerance of the gap]
Rear side: 0-0.2 mm
Front side: 0 mm


Fig. 3-50

## [B] Adjustment

(1) Close the ADF.
(2) Adjust it by turning the adjustment screws on the hinges.

- Adjust the height on the rear side by means of the screw on the hinge on the feed side of the ADF.
Turn it clockwise $\qquad$ Heightened
Turn it counterclockwise Lowered

- Adjust the gap on the rear side by means of the screw on the hinge on the feed side of the ADF.
Turn it clockwis $\qquad$ Lowered
Turn it counterclockwise ...... Heightened


Fig. 3-52

### 3.9.3 Adjustment of Skew

## Note:

Check if the image adjustment for the equipment is performed properly before this adjustment of the RADF. Also, the RADF position and height shall be adjusted properly.

## [A] Checking

Check the image using the chart (original) with vertical and horizontal lines in the following procedure.


Fig. 3-53 Chart (Original)
(1) Place the chart provided as an original with its face up on the original tray of the ADF, select [1 Sided -> 1 Sided] and press the [START] button.
(2) Superimpose the chart on the copy and check the inclination of the copy image.

## [B] Adjustment

(1) Shift the aligning plate with the scale as the guide shown in the figure below to adjust the skew.


Fig. 3-54
(2) If the image skew is "C" as shown in the figure below, shift the aligning plate in the direction of "+", and if "D", shift it to "-".


Fig. 3-55
Shift the aligning plate in the direction of " + ".


Fig. 3-56
Shift the aligning plate in the direction of "-".

### 3.9.4 Adjustment of the Leading Edge Position

## Note:

Check if the image adjustment for the equipment is performed properly before this adjustment of the ADF. Also, the ADF position and height shall be adjusted properly.

## [A] Checking

Check the image using the chart (original) with vertical and horizontal lines in the following procedure.
(1) Place the chart provided as an original with its face up on the original tray of the ADF, select [1 Sided -> 1 Sided] and press the [START] button.
(2) Superimpose the chart on the copy and check the leading edge $E$ of the chart and $F$ of the copy.


Fig. 3-57 Chart (Original)


Fig. 3-58 Copy

## [B] Adjustment

(1) Turn the power ON while pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, key in [365] and then press the [START] button.
(2) Enter the value.

- If the leading edge $(F)$ margin of the copy image is larger than the ( $E$ ) margin of the chart, enter a value smaller than the current one.
Note:
Changing one value shifts the copy image by 0.2 mm .
- If the leading edge (F) margin of the copy image is smaller than the (E) margin of the chart, enter a value larger than the current one.


## Note:

Changing one value shifts the copy image by 0.2 mm .
(3) Press the [INTERRUPT] button.

### 3.9.5 Adjustment of Horizontal Position

## Note:

Check if the image adjustment for the equipment is performed properly before this adjustment of the ADF. Also, the ADF position and height shall be adjusted properly.

## [A] Checking

Check the image using the chart (original) with a center line in the following procedure.
(1) Place the chart provided as an original with its face up on the original tray of the ADF.
(2) Press the [START] button.
(3) Fold the copy in half and check if the center line is misaligned.
[B] Adjustment
(1) Turn the power ON while pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously.
(2) Key in [358] and then press the [START] button.

- If the center line of the copy image is shifted to the front side of the equipment, enter a value larger than the current one.


## Note:

Changing one value shifts the copy image by 0.042 mm .


Fig. 3-59

- If the center line of the copy image is shifted to the rear side of the equipment, enter a value smaller than the current one.
Note:
Changing one value shifts the copy image by 0.042 mm .


Fig. 3-60
(3) Press the [INTERRUPT] button.

### 3.9.6 Adjustment of Copy Ratio

## Note:

Check if the image adjustment for the equipment is performed properly before this adjustment of the ADF. Also, the ADF position and height shall be adjusted properly.

## [A] Checking

Check the image using the chart (original) with vertical and horizontal lines in the following procedure.
(1) Place the chart provided as an original with its face up on the original tray of the ADF.
(2) Press the [START] button.
(3) Superimpose the chart on the copy and check the image dimension "I".

## [B] Adjustment

(1) Turn the power ON while pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously.
(2) Key in [357] and then press the [START] button.

- If the copy image dimension "l" is larger than the chart dimension, enter a value smaller than the current one.
- If the copy image dimension " l " is smaller than the chart dimension, enter a value larger than the current one.


Fig. 3-61
(3) Press the [INTERRUPT] button.

### 3.9.7 Adjustment of ADF Opening/Closing Sensor

Adjust the bracket position so that the sensor is turned ON when the height "A" becomes 100 mm or less (within the empty weight falling limit).



Fig. 3-63

## 4. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM)

### 4.1 General Descriptions for PM Procedure

Perform the preventive maintenance in the following timing.
e-STUDIO163: every 72,000 sheets
e-STUDIO203: every 90,000 sheets
(1) Preparation

- Ask the user about the current conditions of the equipment and note them down.
- Before starting maintenance, make some sample copies and store them.
- Turn OFF the power and make sure to unplug the equipment.
(2) Perform a preventive maintenance using the following checklist and illustrations. Refer to the Service Manual if necessary.
(3) Plug in the equipment after the maintenance has been finished. Then turn ON the power and make some copies to confirm that the equipment is working properly.


### 4.2 Operational Items in Overhauling

Overhaul each equipment with the following timing.
e-STUDIO163: When the number of output pages has reached 216,000 or 2.5 years have passed from the start of use (Whichever is earlier)
e-STUDIO203: When the number of output pages has reached 270,000 or 2.5 years have passed from the start of use (Whichever is earlier)
(1) Replace all the supplies.
(2) Check the components in the drive section (gears, pulleys, timing belts, etc.). Replace them with new ones if they are damaged.
(3) Check all the adhesives such as tape and Mylar if they are damaged or have become unstuck. Replace them with new ones if necessary.
(4) Check the performance of all the switches and sensors. Replace them with new ones if necessary.
(5) Clean inside the equipment thoroughly.
(6) Check if the harnesses, thermistors, fuses, etc. are damaged. Replace them if necessary.

### 4.3 Preventive Maintenance Checklist

Symbols used in the checklist

| Cleaning | Lubrication/Coating | Replacement | Operation check |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A: Clean with alcohol <br> B: Clean with soft pad, cloth or vacuum cleaner | L: Launa 40 <br> SI: Silicon oil <br> W1: White grease <br>  (Molykote X5-6020) <br> W2: White grease <br>  (Molykote HP-300) <br> AV: Alvania No.2 <br> FL: Floil (GE-334C) | Value: <br> Replacement cycle (Value x 1000) <br> $R$ :Replace if deformed or damaged | O: After cleaning or replacement, confirm there is no problem. |

## [Preventive Maintenance checklist]

## Notes:

1. Perform cleaning and lubricating in the following timing.

Exceptionally, the lubrication for the drum unit, main charger, developer unit and transfer unit must follow the PM cycle of each unit.
e-STUDIO163: every 72,000 sheets
e-STUDIO203: every 90,000 sheets
2. Value under "Replacement" indicates the replacement cycle for e-STUDIO163/ e-STUDIO203.
3. The replacement cycle of the parts in the feeding section equals to the number of sheets fed from each paper source.
4. Be careful not to put oil on the rollers, belts and belt pulleys when lubricating.
5. Page-Item $(P-I)$ is described in the column of the Parts list.

## A. Scanner

| Items to check |  | Cleaning | Lubrication | Replacement <br> (x 1,000 sheets) | Operation <br> check | Parts list <br> $<$ P-I> | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A1 | Original glass | B or A |  |  |  | P17-I1 | *a1 |
| A2 | ADF original glass | B |  |  |  | P17-I2 | *a1 |
| A3 | Slide shaft | B |  |  |  |  |  |
| A4 | Carriage rail | B |  |  |  | P9-I9 |  |
| A5 | CIS guide | B |  | R |  |  |  |

B. Laser unit

| Items to check |  | Cleaning | Lubrication | Replacement <br> $(\mathbf{x ~ 1 , 0 0 0 ~ s h e e t s ) ~})$ | Operation <br> check | Parts list <br> $<$ P-l> | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| B1 | Slit glass | B |  |  |  |  |  |

C. Feed unit

| Items to check |  | Cleaning | Lubrication | Replacement <br> (x 1,000 sheets) | Operation <br> check | Parts list <br> <P-I> | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| C1 | Pickup roller |  |  | 90 |  | P16-I17 |  |
| C2 | Drive gear <br> (tooth face and shaft) |  | W1 |  |  |  | *c1 |
| C3 | Paper guide | B |  |  |  |  |  |
| C4 | GCB bushing bearing |  | L |  |  |  |  |
| C5 | One side of the plastic <br> bushing |  | W1 |  |  |  |  |
| C6 | Registration roller <br> (metal) | A |  | R |  | P11-I18 |  |
| C7 | Registration roller <br> (rubber) | A |  | R |  |  |  |

D. ADF (MR-2017)

| Items to check |  | Cleaning <br> $(\mathbf{3 0 K})$ | Lubrication | Replacement <br> (x 1,000 sheets) | Operation <br> check | Parts list <br> <P-I> | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| D1 | Pickup roller | A |  | 90 |  | P5-I1 |  |
| D2 | Separation roller | A |  | 90 |  | P4-I10 |  |
| D3 | Feed roller | A |  | 90 |  | P5-I1 |  |
| D4 | Registration roller | A |  |  |  |  |  |
| D5 | Intermediate transfer | A |  |  |  |  |  |
| D6 | Front read roller | A |  |  |  |  |  |
| D7 | Rear read roller | A |  |  |  |  |  |
| D8 | Exit/reverse roller | A |  |  |  |  |  |
| D9 | Platen sheet | B or A |  |  |  |  |  |

## E. Bypass feed unit

| Items to check |  | Cleaning | Lubrication | Replacement <br> $(\mathbf{x ~ 1 , 0 0 0 ~ s h e e t s ) ~}$ | Operation <br> check | Parts list <br> <P-I> | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| E1 | Pickup roller |  |  | 90 |  | P14-I22 |  |
| E2 | Feed roller |  |  | 90 |  | P14-I22 |  |
| E3 | Separation pad |  |  | 90 |  | P13-I22 |  |
| E4 | Bypass tray | B |  |  |  |  |  |
| E5 | Drive gear <br> (tooth face and shaft) |  | W1 |  |  |  |  |
| E6 | GCB bushing bearing |  | L |  |  |  |  |
| E7 | One side of the plastic <br> bushing |  | W1 |  |  |  |  |

F. Main charger

| Items to check |  | Cleaning | Lubrication | Replacement <br> (KD) | Operation <br> check | Parts list <br> <P-I> | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| F1 | Main charger case | B |  |  |  | P18-I1 | $*^{*}$ f1 |
| F2 | Needle electrode |  |  | $72 / 90$ |  | P18-I2 | *f1 |
| F3 | Contact point of termi- <br> nals | B |  |  |  |  |  |
| F4 | Main charger wire <br> cleaner |  |  | R | O | P18-I7 |  |
| F5 | Main charger grid |  |  | $72 / 90$ |  | P18-I3 |  |

G. Transfer / Separation charger

| Items to check |  | Cleaning | Lubrication | Replacement <br> (KD) | Operation <br> check | Parts list <br> <P-I> | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| G1 | Charger case | B |  |  |  | P19-I2 | *g1 |
| G2 | Transfer charger wire |  |  | $72 / 90$ | O | P19-I18 | *g1 |
| G3 | Separation charger <br> wire |  |  | $72 / 90$ | O | P19-I18 | *g1 |
| G4 | Pre-transfer guide | B or A |  |  |  |  |  |
| G5 | Post-transfer guide | B or A |  |  |  |  |  |
| G6 | Separation supporter | B |  |  |  |  |  |
| G7 | Terminal cover | B |  |  |  | P19-I110 |  |
| G8 | Contact point of termi- <br> nals | B |  |  |  |  |  |
| G9 | Transfer guide roller | B |  |  |  |  |  |

## H. Drum/Cleaner related section

| Items to check |  | Cleaning | Lubrication | Replacement <br> (KD) | Operation <br> check | Parts list <br> <P-I> | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| H1 | Photoconductive drum |  |  | $72 / 90$ |  |  | Chap. <br> 4.7 .2 |
| H2 | Discharge LED | B |  |  |  |  |  |
| H3 | Whole cleaner unit | B |  |  |  |  |  |
| H4 | Drum cleaning blade |  |  | $72 / 90$ |  | P20-I5 | *h1 |
| H5 | Separation finger for <br> drum |  |  | $72 / 90$ |  | P20-I17 | *h2 |
| H6 | Recovery blade | B |  | $72 / 90$ |  | P20-I6 | *h3 |
| H7 | Ozone filter |  |  | $72 / 90$ |  | P11-I3 |  |

I. Developer unit / Toner cartridge related section

| Items to check |  | Cleaning | Lubrication | Replacement <br> (x 1,000 sheets) | Operation <br> check | Parts list <br> <P-I> | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| I1 | Whole developer unit | B |  |  |  |  |  |
| I2 | Developer material |  |  | $72 / 90$ |  |  | $*_{\text {i1 }}$ |
| I3 | Front shield | B |  | R |  |  |  |
| I4 | Oil seal (6 pcs.) |  | AV | $360 / 450$ |  | P21-I11 | *i2 |
| 15 | Guide roller | B or A |  |  |  |  |  |
| I6 | Side shield | B |  | R |  |  |  |
| I7 | Developer unit lower <br> stay | B |  |  |  |  |  |
| I8 | Toner cartridge drive <br> gear shaft |  | W1 |  |  |  |  |

## J. Fuser/Paper exit unit

| Items to check |  | Cleaning | Lubrication | Replacement ( $\mathrm{x} 1,000$ sheets) | Operation check | Parts list <P-I> | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| J1 | Fuser roller |  |  | 72/90 |  | P23-18 |  |
| J2 | Pressure roller |  |  | 72/90 |  | P24-14 |  |
| J3 | Separation finger for fuser roller |  |  | 72/90 |  | P23-114 | *j1 |
| J4 | Fuser unit entrance guide | A |  |  |  | P24-19 |  |
| J5 | Thermistor (3 pcs.) | A |  | R |  | P23-16 | *j2 |
| J6 | Drive gear (tooth face and shaft) |  | W2 | R |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { P23-122 } \\ & \text { P23-123 } \end{aligned}$ |  |
| J7 | Fuser roller gear |  |  | R |  | P23-110 |  |
| J8 | Pressure roller bushing |  |  | 72/90 |  | P23-130 |  |
| J9 | Exit roller | A |  | R |  | P23-119 |  |

K. PFU (MY-1027)

| Items to check |  | Cleaning | Lubrication | Replacement <br> (x 1,000 sheets) | Operation <br> check | Parts list <br> <P-I> | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| K1 | Pickup roller | A |  | 90 |  | P3-I12 |  |
| K2 | Feed roller | A |  |  |  | P3-I16 |  |




Fig. 4-2 Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)


Fig. 4-3 Paper Feed Unit (PFU)

## Remarks "*" in the Preventive Maintenance Check List

* a1. Original glass / ADF original glass Clean both sides of the original glass and ADF original glass. Make sure that there is no dust after cleaning. Then install the original glass and ADF original glass.


## Note:

Make sure that there is no fingerprints or oil staining on part of the original glass on where the original scale is mounted since the shading correction plate is located below the scale to be scanned.

* c1. Drive gears in the paper feeding section (teeth of gears and shafts)

Apply some white grease (Molykote X5-6020) to the teeth of gears and shafts of the drive gears.

## Note:

Make sure that oil is not running over or scattered around as the gear is rotated coming into the clutch after applying Molykote to the gear which is located near the clutch. The quantity of Molykote should be smaller than that to be applied to the other parts.

* f1. Main charger case / Needle electrode

Clean the main charger case with a cloth soaked in water and squeezed tightly, and then wipe them with a dry cloth.
Clean the needle electrode only with the main charger cleaner.
Replace the needle electrode with a new one if it is damaged regardless of the number of output pages which have been mode.

## Note:

Do not touch the needle electrode with your bare hand when attaching the needle electrode.

* g1. Transfer / separation charger case and transfer / separation charger wire Clean the transfer / separation charger case with a cloth soaked in water and squeezed tightly, and then wipe them with a dry cloth.
Replace the wire with a new one if it is damaged regardless of the number of output pages which have been mode.


## Notes:

- Do not deform the metal plate of the transfer guide roller.
- Be careful of the following when attaching a new wire (length: 353 mm )
- Insert the wire securely into the V-grooves of the front and rear sides.
- Do not twist the wire.
- Do not touch the wire with your bare hand.
* h1. Drum cleaning blade

Since the edge of the blade is vulnerable and can be easily damaged by factors such as the adherence of paper dust. Replace the cleaning blade with new ones if poor images are printed due to the damaged blade regardless of the number of output pages if which have been made.

* h2. Separation fingers for drum

The paper jam may be caused if the tip of the separation finger is damaged or deformed. If there is any problem with it, replace the finger with a new one regardless of the number of output pages which have been made.
If any mark which was made by the finger appears on the printed image, clean the tip of the finger.

## Notes:

1. Wipe the tip of the finger lightly with a dry cloth trying not to deform it. Do not leave the lint on the tip.
2. Apply patting powder to the tip of the fingers and drum surface after replacing or cleaning them to reduce the load on the drum surface by the finger.

* h3. Recovery blade

Replace the recovery blade regardless the number of output pages if the edge of the blade get damaged.

* i1. Developer material

After replacing the developer material, be sure to perform the auto-toner adjustment.
(띠 P. 3-1 "3.1 Adjustment of Auto-Toner Sensor")

* i2. Oil seal (Developer unit)

Mixer unit (Shafts of mixers-1, $-2 \&-3$ ) 6 pcs.

## Note:

Lubricate the oil seal only when the oil seal is replaced.

During replacement, coat the oil seal with grease (Alvanian No.2).
(1) Push in a new oil seal parallel to the mounting hole section of the developer frame or outside of the holder.

* Pay attention to the direction in which the oil seal is attached. (See figure on right.)
(2) Apply an even coat of grease to the inside of the oil seal.
- Amount: About two small drops
(3) Wipe off any grease the exudes from the inside.


Fig. 4-4

* j1. Separation fingers for fuser roller

The paper jam may be caused if the tip of the finger is damaged or deformed. If there is any problem with it, replace the finger with a new one regardless of the number of output pages which have been made. Do not damage the tip of the finger during the cleaning. The finger may be damaged if the toner adhering to the tip of it is scraped off forcibly. Replace the finger if the toner is sticking to it heavily.

* j2. Thermistor

Clean the thermistor with alcohol if the toner or dirt is sticking to it when the fuser roller is replaced.
Do not deform or damage the thermistor during the cleaning. Replace the thermistor with a new one if it is damaged or deformed regardless of degree.

### 4.4 PM KIT

| Item | Product name | Part name | Qty. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| DEV-KIT-2340 | Developer material | D-2320 | 1 |
|  | Drum cleaning blade | BL-2320D | 1 |
|  | Separation finger for drum | SCRAPER-371 | 2 |
|  | Recovery blade | BLADE-REC | 1 |
|  | Main charger grid | GRID-CH-M-371 | 1 |
|  | Needle electrode | CH-M | 1 |
|  | Transfer charger wire | WIRE-CH-060-353-R | 1 |
|  | Separation charger wire | WIRE-CH-060-353-R | 1 |
| FR-KIT-1640 | Ozone filter | FILTER-OZON-TRU-371 | 1 |
|  | Fuser roller | HR-1640-U | 1 |
|  | Pressure roller | HR-1640-L | 1 |
|  | Separation finger for fuser roller | SCRAPER-280 | 5 |
|  | Bush for fuser roller | BUSH-HR/RLR | 1 |
| DF-KIT-3018 | Pickup roller | ASYS-ROL-FEED | 1 |
|  | Feed roller | ASYS-ROL-FEED | 1 |
|  | Separation roller | ASYS-ROL-RET |  |

### 4.5 Jig List

| Item | Parts list |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
|  | Page | Item |
| Door switch jig | 101 | 1 |
| Brush | 101 | 2 |
| Doctor sleeve jig | 101 | 3 |
| Developer material nozzle | 101 | 4 |
| Wire holder jig | 101 | 5 |
| Belt tension jig | 101 | 6 |
| High-voltage transformer jig | 101 | 7 |
| Downloading jig (DLM board) | 102 | 1 |
| Download JIG-2 (6 Flash ROMs) | 102 | 2 |
| Download JIG-1 (2 Flash ROMs) | 102 | 3 |
| ROM writer adapter (For 1881) | 102 | 4 |
| ROM writer adapter (For 1931) | 102 | 5 |

### 4.6 Grease List

| Grease name |  | Part name | Volume | Container | Parts list |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Page |  |  | Item |
| SI | Silicon oil |  | ASM-SILICONE-1M | 100cc | Bottle | 101 | 10 |
| L | Launa 40 | OIL-LAUNA40-100 | 100cc | Oiler | 101 | 11 |
| W2 | White grease (Molykote HP-300) | ASM-PG-HP300-S | 100 g | Bottle | 101 | 12A |
| W2 | White grease (Molykote HP-300) | GREASE-HP300-S | 10 g | Bottle | 101 | 12B |
| AV | Alvania No. 2 | ASM-PG-ALV2 | 100 g | Tube | 101 | 13 |
| W1 | White grease (Molykote X5-6020) | MOLYKOTE-100 | 100 g | Tube | 101 | 14 |
| FL | Floil (GE-334C) | ASM-PG-GE334C-S | 20 g | Bottle | 101 | 15 |

### 4.7 Precautions for Storing and Handling Supplies

### 4.7.1 Precautions for storing TOSHIBA supplies

1) Toner/Developer

Toner and developer should be stored in a place where the ambient temperature is between $10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $35^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ (no condensation), and should also be protected against direct sunlight during transportation.
2) Photoconductive drum

Like the toner and developer, photoconductive drum should be stored in a dark place where the ambient temperature is between $10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $35^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ (no condensation). Be sure to avoid places where drums may be subjected to high humidity, chemicals and/or their fumes.
3) Drum cleaning blade

This item should be stored in a flat place where the ambient temperature is between $10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $35^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, and should also be protected against high humidity, chemicals and/or their fumes.
4) Fuser roller / Pressure roller / Cleaning roller

Avoid places where the rollers may be subjected to high humidity, chemicals and/or their fumes.
5) Paper

Avoid storing paper in places where it may be subjected to high humidity.
After a package is opened, be sure to place and store it in a storage bag.

### 4.7.2 Checking and cleaning of photoconductive drum

1) Use of gloves

If fingerprints or oil adhere to the drum surface, the property of the photoconductive drum may degrade, affecting the quality of the print image. So, do not touch the drum surface with bare hands.
2) Handling precautions

As the photoconductive drum surface is very sensitive, be sure to handle the drum carefully when installing and removing it so as not damage its surface.
Be sure to apply "patting powder" (lubricant) to the entire surface of the drum (including both ends of the drum where OPC is not coated) when replacing the drum. When the drum has been replaced with a new one, the drum counter (the Setting Mode 08-1150-0,3,6,7) must be cleared to 0 (zero). This clearing can be performed in the PM Support Mode.

## Notes:

- Application of the patting powder is for reducing the friction between the drum and cleaning blade. If the application of patting powder is neglected, the drum and cleaning blade may be damaged.
- When paper fibers or dint adhere to the cleaning blade edge, they may reduce the cleaning efficiency and, in addition, may damage the blade and the drum. Be sure to remove any fibers found adhering to the blade.

3) Installation of the equipment and storage of drum

Avoid installing the equipment where it may be subjected to high temperature, high humidity, chemicals and/or their fumes.
Do not place the light drum in a location where it is exposed to direct sunlight or high intensity light such as near a window. Otherwise the drum will fatigue, and will not produce sufficient image density immediately after being installed in the equipment.
4) Cleaning the drum

At preventive maintenance calls, wipe the entire surface of the drum clean using the designated cleaning cotton. Use sufficiently thick cleaning cotton (dry soft pad) so as not to scratch the drum surface inadvertently with your fingertips or nails. Also, remove your rings and wristwatch before starting cleaning work to prevent accidental damage to the drum.
Do not use alcohol, selenium refresher and other organic solvents or silicon oil as they will have an adverse effect on the drum.
5) Scratches on photoconductive drum surface

If the surface is scratched in such a way that the aluminum substrate is exposed, no print image will be produced on this area. In addition, the cleaning blade will be damaged so replacement with a new drum will be necessary.
6) Collecting used photoconductive drums

Regarding the recovery and disposal of used photoconductive drums, we recommend following the relevant local regulations or rules.

### 4.7.3 Checking and cleaning of drum cleaning blade

1) Handling precautions

Pay attention to the following points as the cleaning blade life is determined by the condition of its edge:

- Do not allow hard objects to hit or rub against blade edge.
- Do not rub the edge with a cloth or soft pad.
- Do not leave oil (or fingerprints, etc.) on the edge.
- Do not apply solvents such as paint thinner to the blade.
- Do not allow paper fibers or dirt to contact the blade edge.
- Do not place the blade near a heat source.

2) Cleaning procedure

Clean the blade edge with a cloth moistened with water and squeezed lightly.

### 4.7.4 Checking and cleaning of fuser roller and pressure roller

1) Handling precautions

- Fuser roller

Do not leave any oil (fingerprints, etc.) on the fuser roller.
Be careful not to allow any hard object to hit or rub against the fuser roller, or it may be damaged, possibly resulting in poor cleaning.

- Pressure roller

Do not leave any oil (fingerprints, etc.) on the pressure roller.
2) Checking

- Check for stain and damage on the fuser and pressure rollers, and clean if necessary.
- Check the separation guide and fingers and check for chipped tips.
- Check the thermistors for proper contact with the pressure roller.
- Check the fused and fixed condition of the toner.
- Check the gap between the entrance guide and pressure roller.
- Check the fuser roller for proper rotation.

3) Cleaning procedure

When fuser roller and pressure roller become dirty, they will cause jamming. If this happens, wipe the surface clean with a piece of soft cloth. For easier cleaning, clean the roller white they are still warm.
Note:
Be careful not to rub the fuser roller and pressure roller surface with your nails or hard objects because it can be easily damaged. Do not use silicone oil on the fuser roller and pressure roller.

## 5. TROUBLESHOOTING

### 5.1 Diagnosis and Prescription for Each Error Code

### 5.1.1 Paper transport jam

[E01] Leading edge of paper not reaching the exit sensor
[E02] Trailing edge of paper not passing the exit sensor
Open the transfer cover. Is there any paper on the transport path?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow \quad$ Remove the paper.
NO
Is the exit sensor working?
(Perform the input check in the test mode: 03-[INTERRUPT]OFF/[9]/[5])
I NO $\rightarrow \quad$ 1) Check if the connector of the exit sensor is disconnected.
2) Check if the connector CN17 on the MAIN board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the exit sensor.
6) Replace the MAIN board.

YES
Is the registration roller clutch working?
(Perform the output check in the test mode: 04-108/158)
NO $\rightarrow \quad$ 1) Check if the connector of the registration roller clutch is discon-
nected.

## [E03] Paper remaining inside the equipment at power-ON

Open the cover of the unit/area whose picture is blinking on the control panel. Is there any paper on the transport path? (Refer to the following table.)
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Remove the paper.
NO
Is the sensor in the jamming area working? (Perform the input check in the test mode: refer to the following table.)

| I NO $\rightarrow$ | 1) Check if the connector of the sensor is disconnected. |
| :--- | :--- |
| 2) Check if any of the connectors on the MAIN board is disconnected. |  |
| 3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are |  |
| open circuited. |  |

YES
Replace the MAIN board.

Relation between the jamming area and the corresponding sensors and covers (If a jam is occurring in the PFU, check the PFU board.)

| Jamming area | Cover | Sensor | Test mode / Input check |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Registration area | Transfer cover | Registration sensor | 03-[INTERRUPT]OFF/[9]/[6] |
| Exit area | Transfer cover | Exit sensor | $03-[$ INTERRUPT]OFF/[9]/[5] |
| PFU | PFU side cover | PFU feed sensor | $03-[I N T E R R U P T] O F F /[7] /[5]$ |

## [E21] Paper fed from the PFU drawer not reaching the registration sensor

Open the transfer cover. Is there paper in front of the registration sensor?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Remove the paper.
NO
Is the registration sensor working?
(Perform the input check in the test mode: 03-[INTERRUPT]OFF/[9]/[6]
I NO $\rightarrow \quad$ 1) Check if the connector of the registration sensor is disconnected.
2) Check if the connector CN26 on the MAIN board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the registration sensor.
6) Replace the MAIN board

## YES

Are the PFU transport clutches (High speed/Low speed) working?
(Perform the output check in the test mode: 04-203, 205)

| 1 | NO $\rightarrow$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| 1 |  |
| 1 |  |
| 1 |  |
| 1 |  |
| 1 |  |
| 1 |  |
| $\downarrow$ |  |

1) Check if the connectors of the PFU transport clutches (High speed/ Low speed) are disconnected.
2) Check if the connector CN4 on the MAIN board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the PFU transport clutches (High speed/Low speed).
6) Replace the MAIN board.

YES

1) Check the condition of the pickup roller of paper source, and replace it if it is worn out.
2) Check the transport roller. Replace it if it is worn out.

### 5.1.2 Paper misfeeding

## [E12] Bypass misfeeding

Open the transfer cover. Is there any paper in front of the registration sensor?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Remove the paper.
NO
Is the registration sensor working?
(Perform the input check in the test mode: 03-[INTERRUPT]OFF/[9]/[6])
I NO $\rightarrow$ 1) Check if the connector of the registration sensor is disconnected.
I 2) Check if the connector CN26 on the MAIN board is disconnected.
1 I
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the registration sensor.

1
$\downarrow$
6) Replace the MAIN board.

YES
Is the bypass pickup solenoid working? (Perform the output check in the test mode: 04-204) Is the bypass paper sensor working?
(Perform the input check in the test mode: 03-[INTERRUPT]OFF/[1]/[4])
$\mathrm{NO} \rightarrow 1$ 1) Check if the connector of the bypass pickup solenoid and bypass paper sensor are disconnected.
2) Check if the connector CN26 on the MAIN board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the bypass pickup solenoid and bypass paper sensor.

।
$\downarrow$
6) Replace the MAIN board.

YES
Check the bypass pickup roller. Replace it if it is worn out.
[E13] Drawer misfeeding (paper not reaching the registration sensor)
Open the transfer cover. Is there any paper in front of the registration sensor?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Remove the paper.
NO
Is the registration sensor working?
(Perform the input check in the test mode: 03-[INTERRUPT]OFF/[9]/[6])
I NO $\rightarrow$ 1) Check if the connector of the registration sensor is disconnected.
I 2) Check if the connector CN26 on the MAIN board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the registration sensor.
6) Replace the MAIN board.

YES
Is the pickup solenoid working?
(Perform the output check in the test mode: 04-201)

| 1 | $\mathrm{NO} \rightarrow$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1 |  |
| I |  |
| I |  |
| I |  |
| I |  |
| I |  |
| । |  |
| $\downarrow$ |  |

1) Check if the connector of the pickup solenoid is disconnected.
2) Check if the connector CN26 on the MAIN board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the pickup solenoid.
6) Replace the MAIN board.

YES
Check the drawer pickup roller. Replace it if it is worn out.

## [E14] PFU drawer misfeeding (paper not reaching the PFU feed sensor)

Open the side cover. Is there any paper in front of the PFU feed sensor?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Remove the paper.
NO
Is the PFU feed sensor working?
(Perform the input check in the test mode: 03-[INTERRUPT]OFF/[7]/[5])
I NO $\rightarrow$ 1) Check if the connector of the PFU feed sensor is disconnected.
I 2) Check if the connector CN4 on the MAIN board is disconnected.
1
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the PFU feed sensor.

1
6) Replace the MAIN board.

YES
Is the PFU pickup solenoid working?
(Perform the output check in the test mode: 04-202)
I NO $\rightarrow$ 1) Check if the connector of the PFU pickup solenoid is disconnected.
2) Check if the connector CN4 on the MAIN board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the PFU pickup solenoid.
6) Replace the MAIN board.

YES
Check the PFU drawer pickup roller. Replace it if it is worn out.

### 5.1.3 Cover open jam

[E40] ADU cover opened during printing Is the ADU cover open?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Remove paper if there is any, then close the cover.
NO
Is the voltage of 24 V being supplied from the power supply unit? (Perform the input check in the test mode: $03-[$ INTERRUPT]OFF/[8]/[6])

I NO $\rightarrow$ 1) Check if the connector for 24 V power supply is disconnected.
I 2) Check if the connector CN23 on the MAIN board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the MAIN board.

YES
Replace the MAIN board.
[E41] Front cover opened during printing
Is the front cover open?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Close the cover.
NO
Is the front cover opening/closing switch working?
(Perform the input check in the test mode: 03-[INTERRUPT]OFF/[9]/[3])
I NO $\rightarrow \quad$ 1) Check if the connector of the front cover opening/closing switch is disconnected.
2) Check if the connector CN3 on the MAIN board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the front cover opening/closing switch.
6) Replace the MAIN board.

## YES

Is the voltage of 24 V being supplied from the power supply unit? (Perform the input check in the test mode: $03-[I N T E R R U P T] O F F /[8] /[6])$

I NO $\rightarrow$ 1) Check if the connector for 24 V power supply is disconnected.
I 2) Check if the connector CN23 on the MAIN board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the MAIN board.

## YES

Replace the MAIN board.

## [E44] PFU cover opened during printing

Is the PFU cover open?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Remove the paper if there is any, then close the cover.
NO
Is the PFU cover opening/closing switch working?
(Perform the input check in the test mode: 03-[INTERRUPT]OFF/[9]/[2])
I NO $\rightarrow$ 1) Check if the connector of the PFU cover opening/closing switch is disconnected.
2) Check if the connector CN4 on the MAIN board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the PFU cover opening/closing switch.
6) Replace the MAIN board.

YES
Replace the MAIN board.

### 5.1.4 Transport jam (ADF)

[E71] Jam not reaching the original registration sensor
Are the pickup roller, feed roller and separation roller stained or worn out?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Clean the rollers or replace them.
NO
Is the original excessively curled or folded?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Flatten and set it again.
NO
Are the original registration sensor working?
(Perform the input check: 03-[INTERRUPT]ON/[5]/[6])
I NO $\rightarrow$ 1) Check if the connectors of the original registration sensor are disconnected.
2) Check if the connector CN74 on the ADF board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected or the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the ADF board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the original registration sensor.

I
6) Replace the ADF board.

## YES

Replace the ADF board.
[E72] Jam not reaching the read sensor
Are the registration roller and read roller stained?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Clean the rollers.
NO
Is the read sensor working? (Perform the input check: 03-[INTERRUPT]ON/[4][[0])
I $\mathrm{NO} \rightarrow \quad$ 1) Check if the connector of the read sensor are disconnected.
I 2) Check if the connector CN75 on the ADF board is disconnected.
1
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected or the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the ADF board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the read sensor.

।
$\downarrow$
6) Replace the ADF board.

YES
Replace the ADF board.

## [E73] Stop jam at the exit sensor

Is the exit roller stained?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Clean the roller.
NO
Is the exit sensor working? (Perform the input check: 03-[INTERRUPT]ON/[2]/[2])
I $\mathrm{NO} \rightarrow \quad$ 1) Check if the connector of the exit sensor is disconnected.
2) Check if the connector CN75 on the ADF board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected or the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the ADF board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the exit sensor.
6) Replace the ADF board.

YES
Replace the ADF board.
[E86] ADF jam access cover open
Is the ADF jam access cover opened?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Remove the original, if any, and close the ADF jam access cover.
NO
Is the ADF jam access cover switch working?
(Perform the input check: 03-[INTERRUPT]ON/[4]/[4])
I NO $\rightarrow \quad$ 1) Check if the connector of the ADF jam access cover switch is disconnected.
2) Check if the connector CN75 on the ADF board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected or the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the ADF board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the ADF jam access cover switch.
6) Replace the ADF board.

YES
Replace the ADF board.

## [E87] ADF open jam

Is the ADF opened?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Remove the original, if any, and close the ADF.
NO
Is the ADF opening/closing sensor adjusted within the specified range?
$\downarrow \quad$ NO $\rightarrow \quad$ Adjust the ADF opening/closing sensor.
YES
Is the ADF opening/closing sensor working?
(Perform the input check: 03-[INTERRUPT]ON/[4]/[3])
I NO $\rightarrow$ 1) Check if the connector of the ADF opening/closing sensor is disconnected.
2) Check if the connector CN74 on the ADF board is disconnected.
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected or the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor pattern on the ADF board is short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the ADF opening/closing sensor.
6) Replace the ADF board.

YES
Replace the ADF board.

### 5.1.5 Drive system related service call

## [C01] Main motor is abnormal

Is the main motor working? (Perform the output check in the test mode: 04-101/151)
I NO $\rightarrow \quad$ 1) Check if the connector CN1 of the main motor is disconnected.
I 2) Check if the connector CN16 on the MAIN board is disconnected.
I
3) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
4) Check if the conductor patterns on the main motor board and MAIN board are short circuited or open circuited.
5) Replace the main motor.
6) Replace the MAIN board.

## YES

Is the LED on the main motor board lit without flickering?
I NO $\rightarrow$ 1) Check if the connector pins are disconnected and the harnesses are open circuited.
2) Check if the conductor patterns on the main motor board and MAIN board are short circuited or open circuited.
3) Replace the main motor.
4) Replace the MAIN board.

YES

1) Check if the PLL lock signal CN305-B8 output from the MAIN board is always level "L"?
2) Check if the voltage supplied to the CPU input terminal IC24-12 is always "L"?
3) Replace the MAIN board.

### 5.1.6 Scanning system related service call

## [C26] Peak detection error

Does the exposure lamp light? (Perform the output check in the test mode: 04-267)
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Replace the CIS unit.
NO

1) Check if the connector of the CIS unit are disconnected.
2) Check the MAIN board if the connector (CN6) is disconnected and the harness is short circuited or open circuited.
3) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
4) Replace the MAIN board.
5) Replace the CIS unit.

### 5.1.7 Fuser unit related service call

## CAUTION

Be sure to turn OFF the power and unplug the power cable beforehand when checking the heater.
The fuser unit itself or the part of the unit remains heated and the capacitors are still charged after a while the power cable is unplugged. So make sure the unit is cooled down enough before checking.
[C41] Thermistor or heater is abnormal at power ON

1. Check the thermistors
(1) Check if the connectors are disconnected.
(2) Check if the center, side and edge thermistors are in contact with the surface of the fuser roller properly?
(3) Check if the harnesses of the center, side and edge thermistors are open circuited.

## 2. Check the heater

(1) Check if the heater is broken.
(2) Check if the connector of the heater is disconnected.
(3) Check if the thermostat is blown.

## 3. Check the MAIN board

(1) Check if the connectors CN17 are disconnected.
(2) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
(3) Replace the MAIN board.
4. Clear the status counter

After repairing the matter which caused the error [C41], perform the following:
(1) Turn ON the power while [ 0 ] and [8] are pressed simultaneously.
(2) Key in " 400 ", then press [START].
(3) Change the current status counter value " 1 " or " 2 " to " 0 ", then press [ENTER] or [INTERRUPT] (to cancel [C41]).
(4) Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Make sure that the equipment enters the normal ready state.
[C44] Fuser is abnormal after abnormality judgment

1. Check the thermistors
(1) Check if the connectors are disconnected.
(2) Check if the center, side and edge thermistors are in contact with the surface of the fuser roller properly?
(3) Check if the harnesses of the center, side and edge thermistors are open circuited.

## 2. Check the heater

(1) Check if the heater is broken.
(2) Check if the connector of the heater is disconnected.
(3) Check if the thermostat is blown.

## 3. Check the MAIN board

(1) Check if the connectors CN17 are disconnected.
(2) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
(3) Replace the MAIN board.

## 4. Check the switching regulator

(1) Check if the connectors CN108 are disconnected.

## 5. Clear the status counter

Change the current status counter value (08-400) " 5 ", " 7 " or " 9 " to " 0 " for [C44], taking the same procedure as that for [C41].

* The status counter value is as follows in the following cases. Change them to "0" respectively.
- The error occurred during warming-up: " 5 "
- The error occurred after the equipment has become ready: " 7 "
- The temperature detected by the center thermistor is $230^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ or higher: " 9 "
- The temperature detected by the side thermistor is $230^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ or higher: " 9 "
- The temperature detected by the edge thermistor is $230^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ or higher: " 9 " only during printing.


## [C45] Thermistor abnormality during printing

1. Check the edge thermistor
(1) Check if the connector is disconnected.
(2) Check if the edge thermistor is in contact with the surface of the fuser roller properly.
(3) Check if the harness of the edge thermistor is open circuited.

## 2. Check the MAIN board

(1) Check if the connector CN17 is disconnected.
(2) Check if the conductor pattern on the board is short circuited or open circuited.
(3) Replace the MAIN board.

## 3. Clear the status counter

Change the current status counter value (08-400) " 6 " to " 0 ".

### 5.1.8 ADF related service call

No service call for the ADF (MR-2017).

### 5.1.9 Laser optical unit related service call

## [CA1] Polygonal motor is abnormal

Is the polygonal motor rotating?
I NO $\rightarrow \quad$ 1) Check if the connector of the harness is disconnected between MAIN board (CN24) and the laser optical unit.
2) Check if the harness is open circuited and the connector pin is disconnected.
3) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
4) Replace the laser optical unit.
5) Replace the MAIN board.

YES

1) Check if the conductor pattern on the MAIN board is short circuited or open circuited.
2) Replace the MAIN board.
[CA2] H -Sync detection error
Are the harness open circuited and the connectors disconnected or misconnected between the MAIN board (CN21, CN22) and laser optical unit?
$\downarrow \quad$ YES $\rightarrow$ Replace the harness. Connect the disconnected connectors.
NO
3) Replace the MAIN board.
4) Replace the laser optical unit.

### 5.1.10 Service call for others

## [C97] High-voltage transformer abnormality

(1) Is the main charger installed securely?
(2) Check if the spring of high-voltage supply contact point is deformed.
(3) Check if the needle electrode is broken or the main charger grid is deformed.
(4) Check if any foreign matters is on the needle electrode or the main charger grid.
(5) Is the transfer/separation charger installed securely?
(6) Check if the transfer/separation charger wire is broken or unhooked.
(7) Check if any foreign matter is on the transfer/separation charger wire.

### 5.2 Troubleshooting for the Image

1) Abnormality of image density / Gray balance


Fig. 5-1

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Density/Gray balance | 1 | Check the density/gray balance. | Adjust the density. |
| Printer section | 2 | Check test print image (07-113). | Go to step 4 if there is any problem <br> on image. |
| Scanner | 3 | Are the original glass and CIS unit <br> dirty? | Clean them. |
|  | 4 | Is the image faded? | Perform troubleshooting for faded <br> image. |
|  | 5 | Is background fogging occurring? | Perform troubleshooting for back- <br> ground fogging. |
|  | 6 | Is there a blotch on the image? | Perform troubleshooting for blotched <br> image. |
|  | 7 | Is the image transferred normally? | Perform troubleshooting for abnor- <br> mal transfer. |

2) Background fogging


Fig. 5-2

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Density reproduction | 1 | Check the reproduction of the image <br> density. | Adjust the density. |
| Background reproduction | 2 | Check the background reproduction. | Adjust the background. |
| Printer section | 3 | Check test print image (07-113). | Go to step 4 if there is any problem <br> on image. |
| Scanner | 4 | Are the original glass and CIS unit <br> dirty? | Clean them. |
| Auto-toner | 5 | Is the auto-toner sensor normal? | Check the performance of the auto- <br> toner sensor and readjust. |
|  | 6 | Is the toner supplied normally? | Check the motor and circuits. |
| High-voltage transformer <br> (Main charger / Developer <br> bias) | 7 | Is the high-voltage transformer out- <br> put defective? | Adjust the output, or replace the <br> transformer. |
| Developer unit | 8 | Is the contact between the drum and <br> developer material normal? | Adjust the doctor-sleeve gap and <br> polarity. |
| Developer material/Toner/ <br> Drum | 9 | Using the specified developer mate- <br> rial, toner and drum? | Use the specified developer material, <br> toner and drum. |
|  | 10 | Have the developer material and <br> drum reached their PM life? | Replace the developer material and <br> drum. |
|  | 11 | Is the storage environment of the <br> toner cartridge 35c less without <br> dew? | Use the toner cartridge stored in the <br> environment within specification. |
| Drum cleaning blade | 12 | Is the drum cleaned properly? | Check the pressure of the drum <br> cleaning blade. |
| Toner dusting | 13 | Is toner heaped on the seal of the <br> developer unit? | Remove the toner and clean the <br> developer unit. |

3) Moire/lack of sharpness


Fig. 5-3

Moire

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Density reproduction | 1 | Check the reproduction of the image <br> density. | Adjust the density. |
| Parameter adjustment <br> value | 2 | Check the image processing param- <br> eters. | Check the adjustment value for <br> sharpness. |
| Printer section | 3 | Check test print image (07-113). | When defects occur, perform the cor- <br> responding troubleshooting proce- <br> dure. |

Lack of sharpness

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Density reproduction | 1 | Check the reproduction of the image <br> density. | Adjust the density. |
| Parameter adjustment <br> value | 2 | Check the image processing param- <br> eters. | Check the adjustment value for <br> sharpness. |
| Printer section | 3 | Check test print image (07-113). | When defects occur, perform the cor- <br> responding troubleshooting proce- <br> dure. |
|  | 4 | Check the image processing param- <br> eters. | Check the encircled areas A and B in <br> the image, and change the sharp- <br> ness intensity in the sharpness <br> adjustment mode. |

4) Toner offset


Fig. 5-4

Toner offset (Shadow image appears approx. 94 mm toward the dark image.)

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Density | 1 | Is the density too high? | Adjust the density. |
| Fuser unit | 2 | Is the pressure of the fuser roller nor- <br> mal? | Check the pressure releasing parts <br> and pressurization mechanism. |
|  | 3 | Is the thermistor in contact with the <br> fuser roller? | Contact the thermistor with the fuser <br> roller. |
|  | 4 | Is there a scratch on the fuser roller <br> surface? | Replace the fuser roller. |
|  | 5 | Has the fuser roller reached its PM <br> life? | Replace the fuser roller. |
|  | 6 | Is the setting temperature of the fuser <br> roller normal? | Check the adjustment values of fuser <br> roller temperature? <br> $08-407,410,411,450,515,516$ |
| Paper | 7 | Has the appropriate paper type been <br> selected? | Select a proper mode. |
| 8 | Is the setting temperature of the fuser <br> roller in each paper type normal? | Check the setting and correct it. <br> $08-413,437,438,451,452,453$, <br> 520,521 |  |
|  | 9 | Using the recommended paper? | Use the recommended paper. |
| Developer material | 10 | Using the specified developer mate- <br> rial? | Use the specified developer material <br> and toner. |
| Scanner | 11 | Are the original glass (especially the <br> position of shading correction plate) <br> and CIS unit dirty? | Clean them. |

5) Blurred image


Fig. 5-5

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Paper | 1 | Is the paper in the drawer damp? | Change paper. Avoid storing paper in <br> damp place. |
| Bedewed scanner | 2 | Is the scanner bedewed? | Clean the scanner. |
| Drum | 3 | Is the drum surface wet or dirty? | Wipe the drum with a piece of dry <br> cloth. <br> Do not use alcohol or other <br> organic solvents. |
| Ozone exhaust | 4 | Is the exhaust fan operating prop- <br> erly? | Check the connection of connector. <br> Replace the ozone exhaust fan. |
|  | 5 | Is the ozone filter stained or dam- <br> aged? | Replace the ozone filter. |

6) Poor fusing


Fig. 5-6

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Heater electric power | 1 | Check if the connector contacts prop- <br> erly. | Correct it. |
|  | 2 | Is the heater shorted or broken? | Replace the heater. |
| Pressure between fuser <br> roller and pressure roller | 3 | Are the pressure springs working <br> properly? | Check and adjust the pressure <br> springs. |
| Fuser roller temperature | 4 | Is the temperature of the fuser roller <br> normal? | Check the setting and correct it. <br> 08-407, 410, 411, 450, 515, 516 |
| Developer material/Toner | 5 | Using the specified developer mate- <br> rial and toner? | Use the specified developer material <br> and toner. |
| Paper | 6 | Is the paper in the drawer damp? | Avoid storing paper in damp place. |
|  | 7 | Is the paper type corresponding to its <br> mode? | Use the proper type of paper or <br> select the proper mode. |
|  | 8 | Is the setting temperature of the fuser <br> roller in each paper type normal? | Check the setting and correct it. <br> $08-413,437,438,451,452,453$, <br> 520,521 |
|  | 9 | Using the recommended paper? | Use the recommended paper. |

7) Blank copy


Fig. 5-7

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Transfer charger wire | 1 | Is the transfer charger wire cut off? | Replace the transfer charger wire. |
| High-voltage transformer <br> (Transfer charger, Devel- <br> oper bias) | 2 | Is the high-voltage transformer out- <br> put defective? | Adjust the output, or replace the <br> transformer. |
|  | 3 | Are the connectors of the high-volt- <br> age harness securely connected? Is <br> the harness open circuited? | Reconnect the harness securely. <br> Replace the high-voltage harness. |
| Developer unit | 4 | Is the developer unit installed prop- <br> erly? | Check and correct the engaging con- <br> dition of the developer unit gears. |
|  | 5 | Do the developer sleeve and mixers <br> rotate? | Check and fix the drive system of the <br> developer unit. |
|  | 6 | Is the developer material smoothly <br> transported? | Remove the foreign matter from the <br> developer material. |
|  | 7 | Has the magnetic brush phase been <br> shifted? | Adjust the developer polarity. |
|  | 8 | Is the doctor blade positioned prop- <br> erly? | Adjust it using the doctor-sleeve jig. |
| Drum | 9 | Is the drum rotating? | Check the drive system of the drum. |
| MAIN, LDR, SNS boards, <br> CIS unit and harnesses | 10 | Are the connectors securely con- <br> nected? <br> Check if the harnesses connecting <br> the boards are open circuited. | Connect the connectors securely. <br> Replace the harness. |

8) Solid copy


Fig. 5-8

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Scanner | 1 | Does the exposure lamp light? | Check if the connector contacts with <br> the MAIN board and CIS unit termi- <br> nal. |
| Bedewed scanner and <br> drum | 2 | Is the scanner or drum bedewed? | Clean the CIS unit and drum. <br> Keep the power cord plugged in all <br> trough the day and night. <br> (For the model with damp heater) |
| Main charger | 3 | Is the main charger securely <br> installed? | Install it securely. |
|  | 4 | Is the needle electrode broken? | Replace the needle electrode. |
| High-voltage transformer <br> (Main charger) | 5 | Is the high-voltage transformer out- <br> put defective? | Adjust the output, or replace the <br> transformer. |
|  | 6 | Are the connectors of the high-volt- <br> age harness securely connected? Is <br> the harness open circuited? | Reconnect the harness securely. <br> Replace the high-voltage harness. |
| MAIN, LDR, SNS boards, <br> CIS unit and harnesses | 7 | Are the connectors securely con- <br> nected? <br> Check if the harnesses connecting <br> the boards are open circuited. | Connect the connectors securely. <br> Replace the harness. |

9) White banding (in the feeding direction)


Fig. 5-9

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Laser optical unit | 1 | Is there a foreign matter or stain on <br> the slit glass? | Remove the foreign matter or stain. |
| Main charger grid | 2 | Is there a foreign matter or dew on <br> the charger grid? | Remove the foreign matter. |
| Transfer charger wire | 3 | Is there any foreign matter or stain on <br> the transfer charger wire? | Clean the transfer charger wire. |
| Developer unit | 4 | Is the developer material transported <br> properly? | Remove the foreign matter if there is <br> any. |
|  | 5 | Is there a foreign matter or dew on <br> the drum seal? | Remove the foreign matter or dew. |
|  | 6 | Is the upper drum seal of the devel- <br> oper unit in contact with the drum? | Correct the position of the drum seal <br> or replace it. |
| Drum | 7 | Is there a foreign matter on the drum <br> surface? | Replace the drum. |
| Transport path | 8 | Does the toner image contact with <br> any foreign matter before the paper <br> enters the fusing section after the <br> separation? | Remove the foreign matter. |
| Discharge LED | 9 | Is any of the discharge LEDS off? | Replace the discharge LED. |
| Scanner | 10 | Are the original glass (especially the <br> position of shading correction plate) <br> and CIS unit dirty? | Clean them. |
| Cleaner | 11 | Is there any foreign matter, which <br> contacts the drum on the cleaner <br> stay? | Remove the foreign matter. |

10)White banding (at right angle with the feeding direction)


Fig. 5-10

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Main charger | 1 | Is there a foreign matter on the <br> charger? | Remove the foreign matter. |
|  | 2 | Is the connector in proper contact <br> with the terminal? | Clean or adjust the terminal. |
| Drum | 3 | Is there any abnormality on the drum <br> surface? | Replace the drum. |
| Discharge LED | 4 | Does the discharge LED light nor- <br> mally? | Replace the discharge LED or check <br> the harness and the circuit. |
| Developer unit | 5 | Is the developer sleeve rotating nor- <br> mally? <br> Is there any abnormality on the <br> sleeve surface? | Check the drive system of the devel- <br> oper unit, or clean the sleeve sur- <br> face. |
| Drive system | 6 | Are the drum and scanner jittering? | Check each drive system. |
| High-voltage transformer <br> (Main charger / Developer <br> bias / Transfer charger) | 7 | Is the high-voltage transformer out- <br> put defective? | Adjust the output, or replace the <br> transformer. |
| Transfer charger | 8 | Is any foreign matter such as paper <br> shred sticking to the transfer charger <br> wire? | Remove the foreign matter from the <br> wire. |
| Feed system | 9 | Is the aligning amount proper? | Adjust the aligning amount. |

11)Skew (inclined image)


Fig. 5-11

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Drawers | 1 | Is the drawer properly installed? | Install the drawer properly. |
|  | 2 | Is there too much paper in the <br> drawer? | Reduce paper to 250 sheets or less. |
|  | 3 | Is the corner of the paper folded? | Change the direction of the paper <br> and set it again. |
|  | 4 | Are the side guides of the drawer <br> properly installed? | Adjust the position of the side guides. |
| Feed roller | 5 | Is the surface of the feed roller dirty? | Clean the feed roller surface with <br> alcohol, or replace the roller. |
| Rollers | 6 | Are the roller and shaft secured? | Check and tighten the E-rings, pins, <br> clips and setscrews. |
| Registration roller | 7 | Is the spring detached from the regis- <br> tration roller? | Attach the spring correctly. Clean the <br> roller if it is dirty. |
| Pre-registration guide | 8 | Is the pre-registration guide properly <br> installed? | Correct it. |
| CIS unit | 9 | Is the CIS unit slanted? | Replace the CIS case. |
| Feed system | 10 | Is the aligning amount proper? | Adjust the aligning amount. |

12)Black banding (in the feeding direction)


Fig. 5-12

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Shading correction plate | 1 | Is there dust or stains on part of the original glass where the shading correction plate is placed. | Clean the plate. |
| Main charger | 2 | Is there a foreign matter on the main charger grid? | Remove the foreign matter. |
|  | 3 | Is the main charger grid dirty or deformed? | Clean or replace the main charger grid. |
|  | 4 | Is there a foreign matter on the main charger? | Remove the foreign matter. |
|  | 5 | Is the needle electrode dirty or deformed? | Clean or replace the needle electrode. |
|  | 6 | Is there a foreign matter inside the main charger case? | Remove the foreign matter. |
|  | 7 | Is the inside of the main charger case dirty? | Clean the inside of the main charger case. |
| Cleaner | 8 | Is there paper dust sticking to the drum cleaning blade edge? | Clean or replace the cleaning blade. |
|  | 9 | Is the drum cleaning blade working properly? | Check the pressurization of the drum cleaning blade. |
|  | 10 | Has the used toner been recovered properly? | Clean the toner recovery auger. |
| Fuser unit | 11 | Is the fuser roller surface dirty or damaged? | Clean or replace the fuser roller. |
|  | 12 | Is the thermistor dirty? | Clean the thermistor. |
| Drum | 13 | Are there scratches on the drum surface? | Replace the drum. |
| Laser optical unit | 14 | Is there a foreign matter or stain on the slit glass? | Remove the foreign matter or the stain. |

13)Black banding (at right angle with the feeding direction)


Fig. 5-13

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Main charger | 1 | Is the needle electrode dirty or <br> deformed? | Clean or replace the needle elec- <br> trode. |
| Fuser unit | 2 | Are the fuser roller, separation finger <br> for fuser roller and thermistor dirty? | Clean them. |
|  | 3 | Has the cleaning roller, pressure <br> roller, fuser roller and separation fin- <br> ger for fuser roller reached their PM <br> life? | Replace them. |
| High-voltage transformer <br> (Main charger / Developer <br> bias / Transfer charger) | 4 | Is the high-voltage transformer out- <br> put defective? | Adjust the output, or replace the <br> transformer. |
| Drum | 5 | Is there a deep scratch on the drum <br> surface? | Replace the drum if the scratch has <br> reached the aluminum base. |
|  | 6 | Is there thin scratch (drum pitting) on <br> the drum surface? | Check and adjust the contact condi- <br> tion of the cleaning blade and recov- <br> ery blade. |
| Scanner | 7 | Are the original glass (especially the <br> position of shading correction plate) <br> and CIS unit dirty? | Clean them. |

14)White spots


Fig. 5-14

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Developer unit, <br> Toner cartridge | 1 | Is the toner density in the developer <br> material appropriate? | Check and correct the auto-toner <br> sensor and toner supply operation. <br> Check if the amount of the toner is <br> sufficient in the toner cartridge. |
|  | 2 | Is the doctor-sleeve gap proper? | Adjust the doctor-sleeve gap. |
|  | 3 | Using the specified developer mate- <br> rial, toner and drum? | Use the specified developer material, <br> toner and drum. |
|  | 4 | Have the developer material and <br> drum reached their PM life? | Replace the developer material and <br> drum. |
|  | 5 | Is the storage environment of the <br> toner cartridge $35^{\circ}$ c or less without <br> dew? | Use the toner cartridge stored in the <br> environment with specification. |
|  | 6 | Is there any dent on the drum sur- <br> face? | Replace the drum. |
|  | 7 | Is there any film forming on the <br> drum? | Clean or replace the drum. |
| Main charger | 8 | Is there any foreign matter on the <br> charger? | Remove it. |
|  | 9 | Is the needle electrode dirty or <br> deformed? | Clean or replace the needle elec- <br> trode. |
| High-voltage transformer <br> (Main charger / Developer <br> bias / Transfer charger) | 10 | Is the high-voltage transformer out- <br> put defective? | Adjust the output, or replace the <br> transformer. |
| Transfer/Separation <br> charger | 11 | Is there any foreign matter such as <br> fiber in the paper transport area of <br> the transfer/separation charger? | Clean the transfer/separation <br> charger. |

15)Poor image transfer


Fig. 5-15

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Paper | 1 | Is the paper in the drawer curled? | Reinsert the paper with the reverse <br> side up or change the paper. |
|  | 2 | Is the paper in the drawer damp? | Avoid storing paper in damp place. |
|  | 3 | Is the paper type corresponding to its <br> mode? | Select the proper mode. |
|  | 4 | Using the recommended paper? | Use the recommended paper. |
| Transfer charger | 5 | Is the transfer charger case dirty? | Clean the transfer charger case. |
|  | 6 | Is the transfer charger wire dirty? | Clean the transfer charger wire. |
| Registration roller | 7 | Is there any abnormality related to <br> the registration roller or with the roller <br> itself? | Clean the roller if it is dirty. Securely <br> attach the springs if they are <br> detached. Replace the clutch if it is <br> defective. Adjust the rotation speed <br> of the roller. |
| High-voltage transformer <br> (Transfer charger) | 8 | Is the high-voltage transformer out- <br> put defective? | Adjust the output, or replace the <br> transformer. |

16)Uneven image density


Fig. 5-16

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Main charger | 1 | Is the main charger dirty? | Clean or replace the needle elec- <br> trode and main charger grid. |
| Transfer charger | 2 | Is the transfer charger dirty? | Clean the transfer charger. |
|  | 3 | Is the transfer charger wire dirty? | Clean the transfer charger wire. |
| Laser optical unit | 4 | Is there any foreign matter or stain on <br> the slit glass? | Remove the foreign matter or stain. |
| Discharge LED | 5 | Are the connectors of discharge LED <br> harness securely connected? | Reconnect the harness securely. |
|  | 6 | Is the discharge LED dirty? | Clean the discharge LED. |
| 7 | 7 | Is any of the discharge LEDs off? | Replace the discharge LED. |
| Developer unit | 8 | Is the magnetic brush in proper con- <br> tact with the drum? | Adjust the doctor-sleeve gap. |
|  | 9 | Is the developer sleeve pressuriza- <br> tion mechanism working? | Check the mechanism. |
| 10 | Is the developer material transported <br> normally? | Remove foreign matters if there is <br> any. |  |
| Scanner section | 11 | Is the platen cover or ADF opened? | Close the platen cover or ADF. |
| 12 | Are the original glass (especially the <br> position of shading correction plate) <br> and CIS unit dirty? | Clean them. |  |

17)Faded image (low density, abnormal gray balance)


Fig. 5-17

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Toner empty | 1 | Is "ADD TONER" symbol lit? | Replace the toner cartridge. |
| Auto-toner circuit | 2 | Is there enough toner in the cartridge? | Check the performance of the autotoner circuit. |
|  | 3 | Is the toner density in the developer material too low? |  |
| Toner motor | 4 | Is the toner motor working normally? | Check the toner motor and the motor drive. |
| Toner cartridge | 5 | Is there any problem with the toner cartridge? | Replace the toner cartridge. |
| Developer material | 6 | Has the developer material reached its PM life? | Replace the developer material. |
| Developer unit | 7 | Is the magnetic brush in proper contact with the drum? | Check the installation of the developer unit. <br> Adjust the doctor-sleeve gap and polarity. |
|  | 8 | Is the developer sleeve pressurization mechanism working? | Check the mechanism. |
| Main charger | 9 | Is the main charger dirty? | Clean it or replace the needle electrode and main charger grid. |
| Drum | 10 | Is "film-forming" occurring on the drum surface? | Clean or replace the drum. |
|  | 11 | Has the drum reached its PM life? | Replace the drum. |
| Transfer charger | 12 | Is the transfer charger wire cut off? | Replace the transfer charger wire. |
| High-voltage transformer | 13 | Is the setting for the high-voltage transformer proper? | Adjust the output from the high-voltage transformer. |
|  | 14 | Are the connectors of the high-voltage harness securely connected? Is the harness open circuited? | Reconnect the harness securely. Replace the high-voltage harness. |
| Discharge LED | 15 | Are the connectors of discharge LED harness securely connected? | Reconnect the harness securely. |

18)Image dislocation in feeding direction


Fig. 5-18

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Scanner/Printer adjust- <br> ment | 1 | Have the printed images been dislo- <br> cated in the same manner? | Adjust the position of the leading <br> edge of paper in the Adjustment <br> Mode. |
| Registration roller | 2 | Is the registration roller dirty, or the <br> spring detached? | Clean the registration roller with alco- <br> hol. <br> Securely attach the springs. |
|  | 3 | Is the registration roller working prop- <br> erly? | Adjust or replace the gears if they are <br> not engaged properly. |
| Registration clutch | 4 | Is the registration clutch working <br> properly? | Check the registration clutch, and <br> replace them if necessary. |
| Pre-registration guide | 5 | Is the pre-registration guide installed <br> properly? | Install the guide properly. |
| Feed system | 6 | Is the aligning amount proper? | Adjust the aligning amount. |

19)Jittering image


Fig. 5-19

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| - | 1 | Is the toner image on the drum nor- <br> mal? | If normal, perform steps 2 to 4. Per- <br> form step 5 and followings in case <br> the image is abnormal. |
| Registration roller | 2 | Is the registration roller rotating nor- <br> mally? | Check the registration roller area and <br> springs for installation condition. |
| Fuser roller and pressure <br> roller | 3 | Are the fuser roller and pressure <br> roller rotating normally? | Check the fuser roller area. <br> Replace the rollers if necessary. |
| Drum | 4 | Is there a big scratch on the drum? | Replace the drum. |
| Operation of carriage | 5 | Is there any problem with the car- <br> riage foot? | Replace the carriage foot. |
|  | 6 | Is the tension of the timing belt nor- <br> mal? | Adjust the tension. |
|  | 7 | Is there any problem with the drive <br> system of the carriage? | Check the drive system of the car- <br> riage. |
| Scanner | 8 | Is the CIS unit secured? | Secure it. |
| Drum drive system | 9 | Is there any problem with the drive <br> system of the drum? | Check the drive system of the drum. <br> Clean or replace the gears if they <br> have stains or scratches. |



Fig. 5-20

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Developer material | 1 | Using the specified developer mate- <br> rial? | Use the specified developer material <br> and toner. |
| Cleaner | 2 | Is the cleaning blade in proper con- <br> tact with the drum? | Check the cleaning blade. |
|  | 3 | Has the cleaning blade been turned <br> up? | Replace the cleaning blade. <br> Check and replace drum if neces- <br> sary. |
| Toner recovery auger | 4 | Is the toner recovered normally? | Clean the toner recovery auger. <br> Check the pressure of the cleaning <br> blade. |
| Fuser unit | 5 | Is the cleaning roller damaged or has <br> it reached its PM life? | Replace the cleaning roller. |
|  | 6 | Are there bubble-like scratches on <br> the fuser roller (94 mm pitch on the <br> image)? | Replace the fuser roller. Check and <br> adjust the temperature control circuit. |
| 7 | Has the fuser roller reached its PM <br> life? | Replace the fuser roller. |  |
| 8 | Is the pressure of the fuser roller nor- <br> mal? | Check and adjust the mechanism. |  |
|  | 9 | Is the setting temperature of the fuser <br> roller normal? | Check the setting and correct it. <br> 08-407, 410, 411, 450, 515, 516 |

21)Uneven light distribution


Fig. 5-21

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Original glass | 1 | Is the original glass dirty? | Clean the original glass. |
| Main charger | 2 | Are the needle electrode, main <br> charger grid and main charger case <br> dirty? | Clean or replace them. |
| Discharge LED | 3 | Is the discharge LED dirty? | Clean the discharge LED. |
|  | 4 | Is any of the discharge LEDs off? | Replace the discharge LED. |
| Scanner | 5 | Are the original glass (especially the <br> position of shading correction plate) <br> and CIS unit dirty? | Clean them. |
| Exposure lamp | 6 | Is the CIS unit degraded? | Replace the CIS unit. |

22)Blotched image


Fig. 5-22

| Defective area | Step | Check items | Prescription |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Paper | 1 | Is the paper type corresponding to its <br> mode? | Check the paper type and mode. |
|  | 2 | Is the paper too dry? | Change the paper. |
| Separation | 3 | Is the output from the separation <br> charger too high? | Adjust the output, from the separa- <br> tion charger. |
|  | 4 | Is the transfer charger case dirty? | Clean the transfer charger case. |
|  | 5 | Is the transfer charger wire dirty? | Clean the transfer charger wire. |
| High-voltage transformer <br> (Transfer charger) | 6 | Is the output from the high-voltage <br> transformer normal? | Adjust the output. Replace the trans- <br> former if necessary. |

### 5.3 Replacement of PC Boards

### 5.3.1 Replacing MAIN board

<<CAUTION IN REPLACING the MAIN board>>
The procedure for replacing the MAIN board is as follows.
<After replacing the MAIN board>
(1) Install SRAM board to the new MAIN board (from the old MAIN board).
(2) [If an expansion memory (GC-1240) has already been installed] Install expansion memory (GC-1240) to the new MAIN board (from the old MAIN board).
(3) Update the version of system ROMs (System Firmware, OS data, UI data) (The ROMs had been used for the old MAIN board).

* See P. 6-1 "6. FIRMWARE UPDATING" for the details of System ROM update.
(4) Perform 08-388 (Copying total counter / SRAM board $\rightarrow$ MAIN board) to recover the total counter.


### 5.3.2 Replacing SRAM board

<<CAUTION IN REPLACING the SRAM board>>
The procedure for replacing the SRAM board is shown below:
(1) Take off the MAIN board from the equipment.
(2) Take off the SRAM board including the locking support from the equipment.
(3) Remove the jumper pin and release the locking support from the SRAM board, and install them to the new SRAM board.
(4) Install the new SRAM board to the MAIN board, and install the MAIN board to the equipment.
(5) Perform 08-389 (Copying total counter / MAIN board $\rightarrow$ SRAM board) to recover the total counter.

## 6. FIRMWARE UPDATING

When you want to update the firmware above or the equipment becomes inoperative status due to some defectives of the firmware, updating the firmware is available by the following actions.

- Updating with the download jig
[1] P. 6-1 "6.1 Firmware Updating with Download Jig"
- Updating with PC connected
[ad P. 6-7 "6.2 Firmware Updating with TOSHIBA Viewer"


### 6.1 Firmware Updating with Download Jig

In this equipment, it is feasible to update the firmware automatically by connecting the download jig using the dedicated connector and turning ON the equipment.

| Firmware | Stored | Download jig |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| System ROM | System control PC board <br> (SYS board) | PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG1(16 MB) |
|  |  | or |
|  | PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG2(48 MB) |  |

Connector (for SYS board connection)


Fig. 6-1 Jig board: PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG2(48 MB)


Fig. 6-2 Jig board: PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG1(16 MB)

## Important:

- The download jig (PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG) has two types having different ROM capacity.

| Download jig | ROM capacity |
| :---: | :---: |
| PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG2 (48 MB) | $8 \mathrm{MB} \times 6$ |
| PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG1 (16 MB) | $8 \mathrm{MB} \times 2$ |

- The download jig (PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG) is the jig in which the Flash ROM is mounted on the board directly. Therefore, ROM writer adapter (PWA-DL-ADP-350) is required to write the data to these Flash ROMs. Refer to the following to write the data.P. 6-5 "6.1.2 Writing the data to the download jig (PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG)"


### 6.1.1 PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG

## [A] Update procedure

Important:

- Turn OFF the power before installing and removing the download jig.
- Do not turn OFF the power during the update. The data could be damaged and not be operated properly.
(1) Write the data to the download jig.
[ad P. 6-5 "6.1.2 Writing the data to the download jig (PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG)"
(2) Turn OFF the power of the equipment.
(3) Remove the rear cover.


Fig. 6-3
(4) Connect the download jig with the connector (CN1) on the MAIN board.


Fig. 6-4
(5) Turn ON the power.

Downloading starts automatically and the processing status is displayed on Control panel.


Fig. 6-5
(6) After the update is completed properly, the LED (DRAWER and Original setting) on the control panel blinks.



Fig. 6-6
When the update is not completed properly, the LED (Paper jam position) on the control panel blinks. Turn OFF the power, and then check the following items. After confirming and clearing the problems, restart updating from the beginning.

- Is the download jig connected properly?
- Is the updating data written to the download jig properly?
- Do the download jig and the equipment operate properly?


Fig. 6-7
(7) Turn OFF the power, remove the download jig and install the cover plate.
[B] Confirmation of the updated data
After the updating is completed, check each data version in the Setting Mode (08) to confirm that the data was overwritten properly.

08-900: System ROM version
08-921: FROM internal program version
08-922: UI data fixed section version
08-923: UI data common section version

### 6.1.2 Writing the data to the download jig (PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG)

The download jig (PWA-DWNLD-350-JIG) is the jig in which the Flash ROM is mounted on the board directly. The ROM writer adapter (PWA-DL-ADP-350) is required to write data to these Flash ROMs. Connect the download jig with the ROM writer via ROM writer adapter to write data.
For the procedure to write data, refer to the download procedure, instruction manual of each ROM writer, or others.


Fig. 6-8

## Note:

There are two types of the ROM writer adapter. Use the proper one according to the ROM writer to be used. Applicable type of the adapter for the ROM writer can be confirmed by the model name indicated on the board. Confirm that the adapter is available for the ROM writer to be used before connecting them. If an unapplied adapter is connected, the application of the ROM writer judges it as an error and writing the data cannot be implemented. Applicable combinations of the ROM writer and adapter are as follows.

| ROM writer | ROM writer adapter |
| :--- | :---: |
| Minato Electronics MODEL 1881XP <br> (or equivalent) | PWA-DL-ADP-350-1881 <br> (model 1881) |
| Minato Electronics MODEL 1893/1895/1931/1940 <br> (or equivalent) | PWA-DL-ADP-350-1931 <br> (model 1931) |



Fig. 6-9 PWA-DL-ADP-350-1881


Fig. 6-10 PWA-DL-ADP-350-1931

## [A] Precaution when writing the data

- Set the writing voltage (VID) to 3.3V.
- When writing the data, set the address from 0 to 3FFFFF. The data may not be written correctly if it is not set.
- The Flash ROM in which the data will be written, on the download jig is selected by switching the rotary switch on the adapter. Be sure to switch the rotary switch on the adapter depending on the data (file) to be written.

| Rotary Switch | File Name | Flash ROM |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | rom_L. bin | ROM1 |
| 2 | N/A | ROM2 |
| 3 | N/A | ROM3 |
| 4 | N/A | ROM4 |
| 5 | N/A | ROM5 |
| 6 | N/A | ROM6 |

Note:
Be sure not to confuse different ROM Versions since the file name is identical although the ROM version is different.

### 6.2 Firmware Updating with TOSHIBA Viewer

Using the TOSHIBA Viewer, you can download the firmware from the PC to this copier for updating.
Important:

- Data to be downloaded should be stored in the same drive as the TOSHIBA Viewer program. If the data is stored in a different drive (including a floppy disk or the drive of another PC connected to the network), downloading may not be performed normally.
- Do not turn off the power of the copier and the PC while data is being updated. Data may be damaged causing the copier not to operate normally.

1) Start the TOSHIBA Viewer, and then Click [Setup] on the main welcome menu.


The Toshiba Setup screen appears.
2) Double click [Download (main board)] in Data sources.


The Service setting dialog box appears.
3) Enter the password "TSBSERVICE".

4) Click [OK].

The Download firmware update dialog box appears.
5) Select the file for the download firmware.


Click [Browse] to select the file to be downloaded.
The selected files are displayed in File.


## Notes:

- The files with the checked boxes are downloaded. Uncheck the box for "Bank-4" since it is not used.
- The following files should be selected for the banks.

Select files according to bank.
Bank 1: Program data
Bank 2: Function data
Bank 3: Language data
Bank 4: (Not used)

- When an inappropriate file is selected for the bank, the following message is displayed. Select the appropriate file.


6) Click [OK].

Downloading starts and the file that is downloaded is displayed.


## Notes:

- It takes approx. 15 to 20 minutes to download the data (when three files are downloaded).
- The copier is automatically reset while downloading.

When the downloading is completed, the following dialog box is displayed.

7) Click [OK].

## 7. POWER SUPPLY UNIT

### 7.1 Output Channel

The following are 4 output channels for the main switch line.

1) +5 V
+5V: CN104 Pin 1
Output to the MAIN board
+5VB: $\quad$ CN104 Pins 6, 7 and 8
Output to the MAIN board
2) +24 V
+24 V :
CN104 Pins 15 and 16
Output to the MAIN board
+24VDF: CN104 Pins 17 and 18 Output to the ADF (via MAIN board)

The following is an output channel for the cover switch line.

1) +24 V
+24VCOV-OFF: CN104 Pins 21 and 22
Output to the MAIN board, PFU (via MAIN board)

### 7.2 Fuse

When the power supply secondary fuse is blown out, confirm that there is no abnormality with each part using the following table.

| Voltage | Board/Unit | Part |  | Fuse type |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| +24V | MAIN board | Scan motor | M1 | F203: 4A |
|  |  | Polygonal motor | M4 |  |
|  |  | Switching regulator cooling fan | M6 |  |
|  |  | Registration clutch | CLT1 |  |
|  |  | Pickup solenoid | SOL1 |  |
|  |  | Bypass pickup solenoid | SOL2 |  |
|  |  | Contact image sensor unit | CIS |  |
|  | PFU |  |  |  |
| +24VDF | ADF |  |  | F202: 4A |
| +24VCOV-OFF | MAIN board | Toner motor | M2 | F201: 4A |
|  |  | Main motor | M3 |  |
|  |  | Exhaust fan | M5 |  |
|  |  | Auto-toner sensor | S6 |  |
|  |  | Discharge LED | ERS |  |
|  | Coin controller |  |  |  |

### 7.3 Configuration of Power Supply Unit



Fig. 7-1

## 8. WIRE HARNESS CONNECTION

### 8.1 AC Wire Harness



Fig. 8-1

### 8.2 DC Wire Harness

$\varangle \quad \mid$




## TOSHIBA

## TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION


[^0]:    ＊1 Turn OFF the power after using the self－diagnosis modes，and leave the equipment to the user．

